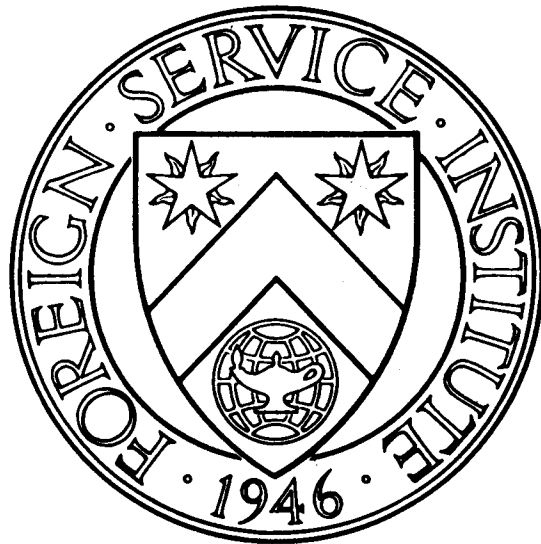


F O R E I G N S E R V I C E I N S T I T U T E

# SAUDI ARABIC

URBAN HIJAZI DIALECT

**BASIC COURSE**



D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

# SAUDI ARABIC

URBAN HIJAZI DIALECT

## BASIC COURSE



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America

MARGARET K. OMAR

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**

WASHINGTON, D.C.

**1975**

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

---

**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**  
**BASIC COURSE SERIES**  
*Edited by*  
**AUGUSTUS A. KOSKI**

## P R E F A C E

In 1974 in the midst of a growing U. S. interest in the Arabian Peninsula the Foreign Service Institute undertook to fill a significant gap in language learning materials: there was no convenient manual for speakers of English who wished to learn the Hijazi dialect of Saudi Arabia. Spoken natively by about two million people and understood and used by at least three million more, it is the most widely understood dialect on the Arabian Peninsula.

The *Saudi Arabic Basic Course (Urban Hijazi Dialect)* is principally the work of Dr. Margaret K. Omar of the FSI linguist staff. In two trips to Saudi Arabia she collected language material and conducted the linguistic research on which the Arabic passages and the grammatical statements in this volume are based. Dr. Omar has elsewhere expressed appreciation to four Jidda residents who were particularly helpful as sources of the Hijazi dialect material appearing in this text. One of them, Mrs. Ayesha Al-Marzouki, worked with Dr. Omar in Jidda at an early stage of the project and later reviewed the Arabic portions page by page with Dr. Omar in the United States.

Dr. Omar planned the book, selected the Hijazi materials, fitted them together in their present form, provided the English language glosses, and wrote the explanatory passages. Consultation with a number of specialists in the field assured the accuracy of the work. Dr. Mahmoud Sieny of the University of Riyadh provided counsel on the design and content of the manuscript in its early stages and reviewed it again when it was in near final form. The manuscript also had the benefit of study and comment by Dr. Peter Abboud of the University of Texas, Dr. Ernest Abdel-Massih of the University of Michigan and Dr. Hamdi Qafisheh of the University of Arizona.

Dr. Harlie L. Smith of the FSI linguist staff made helpful suggestions as to form and Mr. Naim Owais, FSI Arabic language instructor, edited the Arabic language content. Mr. Augustus A. Koski edited the English language content and provided support and assistance to Dr. Omar from the earliest stages of planning through the submission of the manuscript for publication.

Typing of the camera copy was done by Mrs. Maryko Deemer, with assistance from Miss Denise Coleman. Cover and title page were prepared by the FSI Audio-Visual Staff, under the direction of Joseph A. Sadote.

The Foreign Service Institute is indebted to the U. S. Office of Education for financial support which has made it possible to prepare and publish this volume.

  
James R. Frith, Dean  
School of Language Studies  
Foreign Service Institute  
Department of State

INTRODUCTION

There are three major groups of dialects in Saudi Arabia--Hijazi, spoken on the western coast, in Jidda, Taif, and the holy cities of Mecca and Medina; Najdi, spoken in and around Riyadh, in the north central part of the country; and Shargi, spoken in the oil-rich eastern region. While the Najdi dialect enjoys prestige by virtue of its conservatism and relative closeness to Classical Arabic and the fact that it is the dialect of the royal family, the Hijazi dialect is used throughout the country for government and commercial purposes, and has become the most widely-understood dialect in the Arabian Peninsula. The Hijazi dialect is not "pure" Saudi Arabic, and reflects recent borrowings from other dialects, especially Egyptian, Jordanian and Palestinian; for this reason, sometimes one word or expression was selected from several which may be heard, and sometimes alternative expressions are introduced, since two or even three forms may be in frequent use.

Since there is no "standard" Hijazi dialect, this book reflects the dialect as spoken in Jidda. Whenever forced to choose between language usage in the other Hijazi cities and that of Jidda, the Jidda usage was given preference. A few of the most common words from Najdi and from other cities are introduced for recognition and identified as such. There has also been a preference for "modern" words and structures, despite the fact that this sometimes means rejecting an older, more "Saudi" usage. This dialect has been designated "urban" Hijazi to distinguish it from Bedouin dialects also native to the Hijaz region.

No doubt Saudi instructors will find that, depending on their place of origin, they may wish to substitute words or alter certain forms used in this text. The student should follow the model of his instructor.

The pronunciation of some sounds in Hijazi is variable. There are three interdental consonants (variations of 'th') which may be pronounced as they are in Classical Arabic and in Najdi, as for example in /thalaatha/, or as they are in Egyptian and Palestinian, which would be /talaata/. Since the latter type of pronunciation is more common in Jidda, it will be presented. This is discussed further in the Pronunciation section.

After completion of this book, the student should have attained a "working" proficiency in the language (approximately S-2 level by the FSI rating system). In other words, the student will be able to satisfy routine social demands and limited business requirements, carry on conversations regarding a wide range of general subjects (asking directions, ordering a meal, giving personal information, making purchases, etc.), and comprehend speech about such subjects at a normal rate of speed. This book will provide a student with all the basic grammatical structures of the dialect, so that he will be ready to proceed on his own to acquire the speed and new vocabulary which lead to real fluency.

Design of the Book

The book is divided into 50 lessons. Each lesson (beginning with Lesson 4) has the following parts:

Dialogue. The dialogues have been kept short and were designed to be practical and worth memorizing. Each dialogue should be memorized for recitation and practice among the students.

Structure Sentences. In each lesson, certain words and grammatical structures are presented. Structures which did not appear in the dialogue will be illustrated in these sentences. Structure sentences serve the purpose of linking the dialogue sentences, which are necessarily limited in type, with the grammatical explanations coming up in the Grammatical Notes. They contain examples of new structures used in a sentence context.

Grammatical Notes. New structures are presented and explained, with examples.

Vocabulary Notes. Included in this section are only the new words which need the illustration of additional forms (for example, the present tense of a verb, or the plural of a noun). Words which are clear from their presentation elsewhere in the lesson will not be repeated here. The student is held responsible for all new vocabulary regardless of where it appears in a lesson, although it is recognized that some words are more essential for the students' own production than others. The instructor will determine which words should be learned for production and which are sufficient for the student to recognize passively.

Drills. New words and structures are drilled by substitution, by the transformation of sentences (for example, from affirmative to negative), by questions and answers, and by translation. The part of a model sentence which is to be substituted is underlined.

Situations. These are typical situations, with the sentences given in English, which the student should be able to say in Arabic after he has mastered the lesson. This section may be used as a self-test at the end of every lesson.

Cultural Notes. Where appropriate, comments on speech attitudes, situational behavior, or social etiquette are presented.

Every tenth lesson is a review lesson.

In addition to the 50 lessons, the book contains a series of appendices dealing with specialized vocabulary, social expressions, gestures, and Saudi names. There is also a glossary and an index of grammatical structures.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I owe thanks to many persons for their assistance in the preparation of this book. I am indebted to Dr. Mahmoud Sieny of the University of Riyadh for his help in all stages of the project. His dissertation, "The Syntax of Urban Hijazi Arabic", was an important source of grammatical information; it is the only scientifically-designed linguistic study of this dialect.

I appreciate the assistance of Mr. Charles Cecil and Mr. Hamdi Rida of the American Embassy in Jidda in helping me meet Saudis who provided me with language information. I thank my informants, among them Mr. Younis Ishaq, Mr. Talal Qusti, and Mr. Mustafa Darwish, all of Jidda, and especially Mrs. Ayesha Al-Marzouki. I also thank Captain Stephen Franke of the U.S. Army, Fort Bragg, for his useful comments.

Finally I express appreciation to the family of Badr El-Din Negm El-Din of Jidda, for their kind hospitality during my two stays there.

ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

(m)	masculine
(f)	feminine
(p)	plural
C	consonant
V	vowel
C <sub>1</sub>	initial consonant of a verb root
C <sub>2</sub>	medial consonant of a verb root
C <sub>3</sub>	final consonant of a verb root
lit.	literally (i.e., literal translation)



GRAMMATICAL TERMS

Most grammatical terms used here are defined as they are introduced. Listed below are a few other general terms which the student should know:

classicism. A word or expression which is borrowed from Classical Arabic. Classicisms will be identified as such.

colloquial. Arabic as it is spoken (as opposed to the written variety of Arabic). Colloquial words are usually slightly modified from Classical or written Arabic and vary considerably from one dialect to another.

conjugate. To list all forms of a verb for the various persons, for example, 'I go, he goes', etc.

decline. To list the various forms of a noun or adjective, for number ('book, books') or gender ('waiter, waitress'). Most nouns in colloquial Arabic are declined for number and gender.

idiom, idiomatic. An expression which is not part of the regular language pattern, and which must be accepted as it is without trying to explain its structure. Idioms will always be identified as such.

literal translation. The word-for-word translation which often does not sound natural in another language. For example, 'Good morning' in Arabic is literally translated as 'the morning of the goodness'. It is better to think of "equivalent translations" when learning a foreign language.

modal word. A helping word which is used with verbs to form a phrase, for example, 'should': 'I should go, we should try', etc.

modify. To refer to or describe another word in the sentence, for example, the adjective 'big' modifies the noun 'tree' in the sentence, 'The tree is big.'

prefix. A grammatical form attached to the beginning of a word, for example 'un-' as in 'unable'.

suffix. A grammatical form attached to the end of a word, for example, '-ing' as in 'going'.

transitive verb. A verb which takes an object, for example, 'hit': 'Bob hit Bill.' In this sentence, 'Bill' is the object of the verb. An intransitive verb does not take an object, for example, 'live'.

PRONUNCIATION

The Transcription System

The following is a list of the symbols used in the transcription of the sounds of Saudi Arabic and their approximate equivalents in English. It was decided to write this textbook using a transcription system rather than the Arabic alphabet because the alphabet cannot accurately represent the pronunciation of all words in the dialect (some consonant and vowel distinctions would be missing) and the instructor or student may be tempted to pronounce the word in the classical way if it is spelled the same. The Arabic alphabet has been added, however, as a supplement to the dialogues, drills, and some vocabulary lists, and is intended for use by the native-speaking instructor. The spelling of some words has been changed to reflect colloquial speech.

It should be borne in mind that Arabic and English sounds rarely correspond exactly, and the correct Arabic pronunciation is to be learned from the instructor.

<u>Arabic Letter</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Approximate English Equivalent</u>
ء	'	the catch in the throat between the vowels of <u>oh-oh</u>
ا	a, aa	ranges from <u>a</u> in <u>cat</u> to <u>a</u> in <u>father</u> ; may be long or short
ب	b	<u>b</u> in <u>bet</u>
د	d	<u>d</u> in <u>dead</u>
ذ	ḏ	not in English; <u>ḏ</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
هـ	ee	<u>ai</u> in <u>bait</u> ; usually occurs as a long vowel
ف	f	<u>f</u> in <u>fee</u>
ق	g	<u>g</u> in <u>get</u>
غ	gh	not in English; somewhat like a Parisian <u>r</u> but harsher
هـ	h	<u>h</u> in <u>head</u>
ح	H	not in English; similar to <u>h</u> , but strongly whispered from deep in the throat
ي	i, ii	if short, <u>i</u> in <u>bit</u> , except at the end of words; at the end of a word or when long, <u>ee</u> in <u>meet</u>
ج	j	<u>j</u> in <u>jet</u>
ك	k	<u>k</u> in <u>king</u>
ل	l	<u>l</u> in <u>let</u>
ل	ḷ	<u>l</u> in <u>ball</u>
م	m	<u>m</u> in <u>man</u>
ن	n	<u>n</u> in <u>net</u>
و	oo	<u>oa</u> in <u>coat</u> ; usually occurs as a long vowel
ق	q	not in English; like the <u>c</u> in <u>cool</u> but farther back in the throat

Arabic Letter	Symbol	Approximate English Equivalent
ر	r	not in English; a tongue-tip trill as in Italian or Spanish
س	s	<u>s</u> in <u>sit</u>
ص	ʃ	not in English; <u>s</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
ش	ʃ	<u>sh</u> in <u>ship</u>
ت	t	<u>t</u> in <u>tip</u>
ط	t̤	not in English; <u>t</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
و	u,uu	if short, <u>u</u> in <u>put</u> , except at the end of words; at the end of a word or when long, <u>oo</u> in <u>cool</u>
و	w	<u>w</u> in <u>wet</u>
خ	x	not in English; <u>ch</u> in German <u>acht</u>
ي	y	<u>y</u> in <u>yet</u>
ز	z	<u>z</u> in <u>zero</u>
ظ	ʒ	not in English; <u>z</u> pronounced with the back of the tongue raised
ع	ʕ	not in English; voiced equivalent of <u>H</u> ; pronounced by tightening muscles deep in the throat

The symbol // over a vowel indicates that the syllable containing that vowel is stressed.

### The Consonants

The consonants drilled here will be those which are different from English. Words used are all real Arabic words, but they will not be translated, since the meanings are not relevant for the drills.

1. /'/ is the sound produced when the breath is stopped in the throat and then released. This sound occurs in English before vowels, such as in the expression oh-oh. It is easy for English-speakers to produce, but in Arabic you must become accustomed to using it in the middle and end of words, as well as in the beginning. Since the sound is automatically at the beginning of a word which starts with a vowel, it will not be marked in the transcription.

insaan	انسان
awwal	اول
sa'al	سأل
mas'ala	مسألة
la'	لا

2. /H/ is pronounced by tightening the muscles in the middle of the throat so that a harsh H results. It sounds like a whisper and is produced without any voice.

Habb	حب	ʃubuH	صبح	Haal	حال
raaH	راح	ʃaHiiH	صحيح	aHwaal	احوال
aHad	احد	marHaba	مرحبا	aHmad	احمد

Contrasts between /h/ and /H/:

hamal	Hamal	هامل	حمن
hāl	Haal	هال	حال
minha	minHa	منها	منحه
taah	saaH	تاه	ساح
nahar	naHal	نهار	نحل
ahlan	aHsan	اهلا	احسن

3. /ʁ/ is the voiced counterpart of the /H/. It is pronounced by tightening the muscles deep in the throat, while using the voice, and results in a sort of strangled sound.

*9arabi	عربي	saa9a	ساعة	da9wa	دعوة
9ala	علي	ma9aaya	معايه	raaji9	راجع
ma9a	مع	baa9	باع	raaj9a	راجعة

Contrasts between /' / and /9/:

aala	9ala	آلة	علي
sa'al	saa9ad	سأل	ساعد
aadaab	9aada	آداب	عاد
iid	9iid	أيد	عبد

Contrasts between /h/ and /9/:

haada	9aada	هادا	عادة
mahmuul	ma9muul	مهمول	معمول
haadi	9aadi	هادي	عادي
šahar	ša9ar	شهر	شمر

Contrasts between /H/ and /9/:

saamiH	saami9	سامح	سامع
balaH	bala9	بالح	بلمع
Haal	9aal	حال	عال
minHa	min9a	منحه	منعة

Contrasts between /i9/ and /9a/:

saami9	saam9a	سامع	سامعة
saabi9	saab9a	سابع	سابعة
ṭaali9	ṭaal9a	طالع	طالمة
raaji9	raaj9a	راجع	راجعة

4. /x/ is pronounced by raising the back of the tongue to the position for /k/, but without blocking the air passage. It results in a friction sound, and is voiceless.

xeer	aaxir	خير	آخر
axuuya	xalli	أخوي	خل
muxx	xamsa	مخ	خمسة

Contrasts between /k/ and /x/:

kaaf	xaaf	كاف	خاف
kaan	xaan	كان	خان
akuun	axu	أكون	أخون
sakan	suxun	سكن	سخن

Contrasts between /H/ and /x/:

Haal	xaal	خال	خال
Haram	xaram	حرام	حرام
ṣaḥān	saxar	صحن	صحن

5. /gh/ is the voiced counterpart of /x/. It is pronounced by raising the back of the tongue to the position for /g/, but without blocking the air passage. It results in a friction sound, and is voiced.

gheer	ghaali	غير	غالي
baghdaad	abgha	بغداد	ابغى
dimaagh	ghariib	رماغ	غريب

Contrasts between /g/ and /gh/:

yibga	yibgha	يبغى	يبغى
gariib	ghariib	غريب	غريب
saayig	saayigh	سابق	سابق
guul	ghuul	قول	غول
istiglaal	istighlaal	استقلال	استغلال

Contrasts between /x/ and /gh/:

xeer	gheer	خير	غير
xaali	ghaali	خالي	غالي
yixayyiṭ	yighayyir	يخيط	يغير
maṭḅax	mablagh	مطح	مبلغ

6. /q/ is pronounced farther back in the throat than /k/, accompanied by tightening the muscles at the top of the throat. The back of the tongue touches the top of the throat, then pulls away suddenly. (This sound occurs only in "classicized" words; it often alternates with /g/.)

qur'aan	قرآن
al-qaahira	القاهرة
iqtiṣaad	اقتصاد

Contrasts between /k/ and /q/:

kaaf	qaaf	كاف	قاف
kamaan	qaamuus	كمان	قاموس
istikraar	istiqbaal	استمرار	استقبال

7. /r/ is pronounced by tapping the tip of the tongue against the ridge above the upper teeth. The quality of /r/ may range from "light" to "heavy". This contrast, however, rarely makes a difference in the meaning of words.

ṣaarif	ṣaariṣ	عارف	شارع
raaḥ	raadyu	راح	راديو
ḡarab	garṣ	غرب	قرش
door	guruuṣ	دور	قروش
Haaḡir	xeer	حاضر	خير

When doubled, /rr/ is a trill, made by holding the tip of the tongue against this ridge and vibrating it.

marra	مرة
barra	بررا
murr	متر
Harr	حور
xarraḡ	خرج

8. Velarized Consonants.

There are five consonants which are "velarized", and contrast with their "plain" counterparts. They will be symbolized with a comma under the letter:  $\underset{\cdot}{d}$ ,  $\underset{\cdot}{s}$ ,  $\underset{\cdot}{t}$ ,  $\underset{\cdot}{z}$ ,  $\underset{\cdot}{l}$ . They differ from the "plain" consonants in that the back of the tongue is raised toward the top of the mouth while the sound is being articulated at the front of the mouth, and the result is a resonant sound. This is also known as "emphasis", and has a noticeable lowering effect on surrounding vowels in the word.

Contrasts between /d/ and / $\underset{\cdot}{d}$ /:

raadyu	raa $\underset{\cdot}{d}$ i	راديو	راضي
daal	ḡaad	دال	ضاد
9add	9a $\underset{\cdot}{d}$ ḡ	عد	عمر
dulaar	ḡuyuuḡ	دولار	ضيوف

Contrasts between /t/ and / $\underset{\cdot}{t}$ /:

tiin	ḡiin	تين	طين
tuut	ḡuub	توت	طوب
taalit	ḡaali9	ثالث	طالع
gatal	giḡaar	قتل	قتار

Contrasts between /s/ and / $\underset{\cdot}{s}$ /:

siin	ḡiin	سين	صين
seef	ḡeef	سيف	صيف
sab9a	ḡabagh	سبعة	صبع
xass	xasḡ	خس	خس
magaas	magasḡ	مقاس	مقاس
gaas	giḡḡa	قاس	قصة

Contrasts between /z/ and / $\underset{\cdot}{z}$ /:

zeet	ḡahar	زيت	ظهر
mazkuur	maḡbuuḡ	مزكور	مظبوط

Contrasts between /l/ and / $\underset{\cdot}{l}$ /:

lillaah	alḡlaah	لله	الله
---------	---------	-----	------

9. The "TH" Consonants.

Three consonants in Classical Arabic have been changed in Hijazi pronunciation. The Classical (and Najdi) pronunciation is heard often enough, however, that the student should be aware of the reason for the variation. The correspondences are:

th as in 'this' (voiced; the phonetic symbol is  $\delta$ ). This is usually pronounced as d or z:

haa $\delta$ a	→	haada
asta' $\delta$ an	→	asta'zan

th as in 'think' (voiceless; the phonetic symbol is  $\theta$ ). This is usually pronounced as t or s:

$\theta$ alaa $\theta$ a	→	talaata
ma $\theta$ alan	→	masalan

ṭh, which is th (voiced), pronounced with the back of the tongue raised (the phonetic symbol is ṭ). It is usually pronounced as z:

maḡbuuṭ → maḡbuuṭ

Of course this does not mean that all the occurrences of s, z, t, or d are in fact 'th' consonants; on the contrary, these consonants are relatively rare. z, however, is always ḏ in Classical Arabic.

### Doubled Consonants

All consonants in Arabic may be doubled, and occur in the middle and at the end of words. In the case of sounds where friction is produced, doubling the consonant means holding it longer:

ṭili9	ṭalla9	طيلع	طيلع
fihim	fahham	فهم	فهم
daxal	daxxal	دخل	دخل
min	sinn	من	من
ṣaghīir	ṣaghghar	صغير	صغير
kam	damm	كم	كم

Some consonants are produced by completely stopping the flow of air. These cannot be actually "doubled", but holding them before releasing them gives that impression:

katiir	kattar	كثير	كثير
kabiir	kabbar	كبير	كبير
makaan	makka	مكان	مكان
baṭal	baṭṭaal	باطل	باطل
mudun	mudda	مدن	مدن
ṣugag	ṣagga	شقق	شقق

As noted above, /r/ changes its quality when doubled:

bara	barra	برى	برى
xaraj	xarraḡ	خرج	خرج
daras	darras	دررس	دررس

### The Vowels

There are five basic vowels in Saudi Arabic; three may be long or short: /a,aa/, /i,ii/, and /u,uu/. Two usually occur as long vowels: /ee/ and /oo/ (because they came from Classical Arabic /ay/ and /aw/, so they are not fully part of the vowel system).

Note that the long vowels are held approximately twice as long as the short vowels, which affects the rhythm of the word.

1. /a,aa/. There is great variation in this vowel, ranging from the flat a of cat to the broad a of father. The pronunciation is usually predictable, and depends on the consonants around the vowel.

The broad /a/ occurs in the environment of the velarized consonants, at the end of words, and in most words which contain /r/ or /w/:

Harr	sayyaara	حر	سيارة
9arabi	waaHid	عربي	واحد
ṭayyiba	ṭaali9	طيبة	طالع
walad	raadyu	ولد	راديو

The flat /a/ occurs in any other environment:

malik	Haal	ملك	حان
xamsa	9aali	خمسة	عالي
galam	gaal	قلم	قال
kam	salaama	كم	سلامه

The quality of /a/ is not entirely predictable, however; for example, it is flat in some words which contain /r/ or /w/, such as /šaari9/ and /mawaad/. In such cases, follow the pronunciation of the instructor. There is great variation among Arabic dialects regarding the pronunciation of /a/, and the precise quality rarely affects the meaning of words.

2. /i,ii/. /i/ is pronounced like the i in bit except at the end of words; final /i/ and /ii/ are pronounced like the ee in meet, except that of course /ii/ is held for more time. Since the quality of these vowels differs, it is easy to hear and produce the difference, but remember that the long vowel must be held longer as well.

min	miin	مين	مين
inti	iidi	انتي	ايدي
hina	šiiil	هنا	شيل
inta	ibrahim	انت	ابراهيم

3. /u,uu/. /u/ is pronounced like u in put, except at the end of words; final /u/ and /uu/ are pronounced like oo in cool.

judud	ma9guul	جدد	مقوقون
ruHt	ruuHu	رحت	رودو
mumkin	šuuil	ممكين	صول
šuftu	suug	شفتوا	سوق

4. /ee/ is pronounced like ai in bait, but it is held longer. It is also more tense.

beet	ma9aleeš	بيت	معلينتر
itneen	eeš	اننين	ايشر
šeef	feen	صيف	فين

5. /oo/ is pronounced like the oa in coat, but it is held longer.

šoot	hadool	صوت	هدول
loon	9irifoo	لون	عرفوه
moot	9irifooni	موت	عرفوني

### Elision

When one word ends in a vowel and the next word begins with a vowel, they may be "elided" together in rapid speech. Dropping these vowels in the text, however, may lead to confusion for the student, who would have probably dropped one of them anyway in imitation of his instructor. For this reason, elision between words will not usually be shown in the transcription; rather, each word will be presented as a whole.

ya aHmad (actually: ya Hmad)	'O Ahmad'
sana uula ibtidaa'i (actually: san uula btidaa'i)	'first grade'



Some special elisions with the definite article, /al-/, will be shown in the text. The /a-/ is dropped after a word which ends in a vowel:

ma9a + al-9eela → ma9a l-9eela 'with the family'

There are also three short prepositions which are conventionally written attached to the /al-/:

fi + al-beet → fil-beet 'in the house'

li + aṭ-ṭawaabi9 → liṭ-ṭawaabi9 'for the stamps'

bi + at-tarjama → bit-tarjama 'with the translation'

Sometimes vowels inside of words are dropped or shortened, and this will be shown in the text; for example:

raaji9 + -a → raaj9a 'returning (f)'

amrikaani + -yya → amrikaniyya 'American (f)'

LESSON 1

Dialogue

A. Hello.	marHaba.	مرحبا .
how	keef	كيف
condition	Haal	حال
your (m)	-ak	-ك
B. Hello. How are you? ('How is your condi- tion?')	marHaba. keef Haalak?	مرحبا . كيف حالك؟
fine, good	ṭayyib	طيب
glory	al-Hamdu	الحمد
to God	lillaah	لله
and	w	و
you (m)	inta	انت
A. Fine, thank God. And you?	ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah. w inta?	طيب الحمد لله . وانت؟
I	ana	انا
B. I'm fine [too], thank God.	ana ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah.	انا طيب الحمد لله .
A. It's good to see you. (lit., 'Welcome!')	ya hala.	يا هلا .
welcome	ahlan	اهلا
to you (m)	biik	بيك
B. I'm glad to see you, too. (lit., 'Welcome to you.')	ahlan biik.	اهلا بيك .

Grammatical Notes

1. You will note that the English translation is not always the exact equivalent of the Arabic expression. "Free", rather than "literal" translations in English will sometimes be used, to make the English more natural. The literal Arabic can be understood from the broken-up words preceding sentences.

2. Arabic has different forms for feminine singular and for plural. Most dialogues will be presented in the masculine singular form, and the other variations will occur in drills. Feminine and plural are marked by various sets of suffixes added to the masculine form; there are different suffixes for different parts of speech.

3. Sentences like /keef Haalak/, 'How is your condition?', and /ana ṭayyib/, 'I am fine', are examples of "equational sentences". An equational sentence is a simple type of sentence which has no verb. The subject is "equated" with the predicate, and the translation in English uses 'am', 'is', or 'are'.

4. The definite article, 'the', is /al-/ in Arabic, prefixed to a noun or adjective. It is not always translated in English. In rapid speech, the vowel may be lost when the preceding word ends in a vowel (see Classroom Expressions, below.)

5. The /wu/, 'and', may be reduced to /w/ or even /u/ when followed by a word which begins with a vowel.

6. If a word has a long vowel, it is stressed; if more than one, the last long vowel is stressed.

imtiHaan	su9uudiyiin
Haalak	šaafóo
salaama	
wizaaraat	

If it has short vowels, a word is stressed on the second-to-last syllable in two-syllable words, and the third-to-last syllable in all others.

inta	9ala
ṭayyiba	huwwa
maḍrasa	múškila
ma9rifatak	kútub

If a word ends in a syllable which has two consonants, that syllable is stressed:

aḥúbb  
waṣált  
atkallamt  
tisa9ṭá9š

Stress is usually predictable; these general rules are sufficient to cover most cases. In words where the stress falls elsewhere, it will be marked.

#### Drills

- |                            |                                      |                   |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. (to a man) How are you? | keef Haalak?                         | كيف حالتك؟        |
| Substitute:                |                                      |                   |
| (to a woman) How are you?  | keef <u>Haalik</u> ?                 | كيف حالتكِ؟       |
| (to a group) How are you?  | keef <u>Haalakum</u> ?               | كيف حالكم؟        |
| 2. Fine (m), thank God.    | ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah.            | • طيب الحمد لله   |
| Substitute:                |                                      |                   |
| Fine (f), thank God.       | <u>ṭayyiba</u> , al-Hamdu lillaah.   | • طيبة الحمد لله  |
| Fine (p), thank God.       | <u>ṭayyibiin</u> , al-Hamdu lillaah. | • طيبين الحمد لله |

- |                                       |                       |            |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| 3. (to a man) And you?                | w inta?               | و انت؟     |
| Substitute:                           |                       |            |
| (to a woman)<br>And you?              | w <u>inti</u> ?       | و انت؟     |
| (to a group)<br>And you?              | w <u>intu</u> ?       | وانتو؟     |
| 4. (to a man) I'm glad<br>to see you. | ahlan biik.           | اهلا بيك.  |
| Substitute:                           |                       |            |
| (to a woman) I'm<br>glad to see you.  | ahlan <u>biiki</u> .  | اهلا بيكي. |
| (to a group) I'm<br>glad to see you.  | ahlan <u>biikum</u> . | اهلا بيكم. |

Exercise: Practice the dialogue in the feminine and plural.

Cultural Notes

1. Greetings in Arabic are important culturally, and several elaborate variations may be used (we have seen two forms of 'welcome' already). Mastering a variety of greeting exchanges is important to establish yourself as "well-mannered". The use of these and other types of speech exchanges which have been developed for different situations is much more important in the Arab world than in America.

Useful Classroom Expressions

- |                                      |                 |               |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. (to a group) Repeat.              | 9iidu.          | عيدوا.        |
| 2. Repeat the sentence.              | 9iidu l-jumla.  | عيدوا الجملة. |
| 3. Repeat the word.                  | 9iidu l-kilma.  | عيدوا الكلمة. |
| 4. (to a group) Open your<br>books.  | iftaHu l-kutub. | افتحوا الكتب  |
| 5. (to a group) Close<br>your books. | igfilu l-kutub. | اقفلوا الكتب. |

## LESSON 2

Dialogue

morning	ṣabaaH	صباح
the goodness	al-xeer	الخير
A. Good morning. ( 'the morning of goodness' ) the light	ṣabaaH al-xeer.	صباح الخير
B. Good morning. ( 'the morning of light' )	an-nuur ṣabaaH an-nuur.	النور صباح النور
A. How are you (m)?	ṣlōonak?	شلونك؟
B. Fine, thank God.	zeen, al-Hamdu lillaah.	زين الحمد لله
when	mita	متا
you (m) arrived	waṣalt	وصلت
A. When did you arrive?	mita waṣalt?	متا وصلت؟
B. Yesterday.	ams.	امس
for	9a (9ala)	ع - (علو)
the safety	as-salaama	السلامة
A. Welcome back. ( 'Thank God for your safety' )	al-Hamdu lillaah 9as-salaama.	الحمد لله عالسلامة
God	aḷḷaah	الله
B. Thanks. ( 'May God make you safe' )	aḷḷaah yisallimak.	الله يسلمك

Grammatical Notes

1. The words /an-nuur/, 'the light', and /as-salaama/, 'the safety', show the definite article becoming /an-/ and /as-/ instead of /al-/. This assimilation of the /l/ to the following consonant occurs with several consonants: t, d, z, r, s, ṣ, ṣ, ḫ, ḡ, ẓ, l, n. You will soon learn to do this automatically.

2. The alternative words for 'How are you?' and 'Fine' are used commonly in the Najd area of Arabia, around Riyadh. The words in Lesson 1 are heard throughout Arabia, but more commonly on the western coast (the Hijaz).

3. In the afternoon and evening, you say "Good evening":

masaa' al-xeer.                      مساء الخير.  
( 'the evening of goodness' )

Response:

masaa' an-nuur.                      مساء النور.  
( 'the evening of light' )

4. /waṣalt/ is a verb in the perfect (past) tense; it has several suffixes for various persons, but will be drilled in this lesson for feminine and plural only.

5. The expression /al-Hamdu lillaah 9as-salaama/ is used when welcoming someone back from a trip or when he has recovered from an illness. It has a standard response.

6. /9a/, 'for', is a contraction of the full word /9ala/; it may be heard in rapid speech.

7. Note that the word /aḷḷaah/, 'God', is pronounced with emphasis and a lower /a/ when alone, and it becomes non-emphatic with a higher /a/ when prefixed.

Drills

1. (to a man) How are you?                      ṣḷoonak?                      شلونك؟

Substitute:

(to a woman) How are you?                      ṣḷoonik?                      شلونك؟

(to a group) How are you?                      ṣḷoonakum?                      شلونكم؟

2. Fine (m), thank God.                      zeen, al-Hamdu lillaah.                      زين الحمد لله

Substitute:

Fine (f), thank God.                      zeena, al-Hamdu lillaah.                      زينة الحمد لله

Fine (p), thank God.                      zeen,\* al-Hamdu lillaah.                      زين الحمد لله

\*Note that this word is not made plural.

3. (to a man) When did you arrive?                      mita waṣalt?                      متى وصلت؟

Substitute:

(to a woman) When did you arrive?                      mita waṣalti?                      متى وصلت؟

(to a group) When did you arrive?                      mita waṣaltu?                      متى وصلتم؟

4. (to a man) May God make you safe.                      aḷḷaah yisallimak.                      الله يسلّمك.

Substitute:

(to a woman) May God make you safe.                      aḷḷaah yisallimik.                      الله يسلّمك.

(to a group) May God make you safe.                      aḷḷaah yisallimkum.                      الله يسلّمكم.

Exercise: Practice the dialogue in the feminine and plural.

Useful Classroom Expressions

1. Pardon? (I didn't understand)	na9am?	نعم؟
2. (to a man) Say it again, please.	guul marra taanya, min faḍlak.	قول مرة ثانية من فضلك.
3. (to a woman) Say it again, please.	guuli marra taanya, min faḍlik.	قولي مرة ثانية من فضلك.
4. Slowly.	b-šweeš.	بشويش.
5. (to a man) Do you understand?	faahim?	فاهم؟
6. (to a woman) Do you understand?	faahma?*	فاهمة؟
7. (to a group) Do you understand?	faahmiin?*	فاهمين؟
8. Yes, I (m) understand.	iiwa, faahim.	ايوه فاهم.
9. Yes, I (f) understand.	iiwa, faahma.	ايوه فاهمة.
10. Yes, we understand.	iiwa, faahmiin.	ايوه فاهمين.
11. No.	la'.	لا.
12. Correct.	ṣaHH	صح.
13. Wrong.	ghalaṭ.	غلط.

\*Note that in these words, the /i/ is dropped ("elided") before the /-a/ and /-iin/ endings.

LESSON 3

Dialogue

(Visiting a home)

peace	salaam	سلام
upon	9alee-	علي-
you (p)	-kum	-كم
A. Peace be upon you.	as-salaamu 9aleekum.	السلام عليكم.
B. And upon you peace. Welcome.	wu 9aleekum as-salaam. ahlan wu sahlan.	وعليكم السلام. اهلا وسهلا.
A. Thanks. ('Welcome to you')	ahlan biik.	اهلا بيك.
B. Come in.	atfaḡḡal.	اتفضل:
A. Thank you.	ḡukran.	شكرا.
I like	aHubb	احب
I introduce	a9arrif	اعرف
you (m) (object)	-ak	-ك
Mr:	as-sayyid	السيد
B. I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad.	aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyid aḡmad.	احب اعرفك على السيد احمد.
C. Pleased to meet you.	ahlan wu sahlan.	اهلا وسهلا.
this (m)	haada	هادا
he	huwwa	هو
from	min	من
B. This is Mr. Smith. He is American, from Chicago.	haada mistar Smith. huwwa amrikaani, min Chicago.	هادا مستر سميت. هو امريكاني من شكاغو.
by	b-	-ب
acquaintance	ma9rifa	معرفة
A. I'm honored to make your acquaintance. ('by your acquaintance')	atḡarraft b-ma9rifatkum.	انشرفت بمعرفتكم.



Structure Sentences

- |  |   |                             |
|--|---|-----------------------------|
| 1. I'd like to introduce you to Mrs. Farida.             | aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyida fariida. | احب اعرفك على السيدة فريدة. |
| 2. (to a woman) I'm honored to make your acquaintance.   | atšarraft b-ma9rifatik.                 | اتشرفت بمعرفتك.             |
| 3. I'd like to introduce you (p) to Miss Amal.           | aHubb a9arrifkum 9ala l-'aanisa amaal.  | احب اعرفكم على الأنسة آمال. |
| 4. (to a woman) We're honored to make your acquaintance. | atšarrafna b-ma9rifatik.                | اتشرفنا بمعرفتك.            |
| 5. She is American.                                      | hiyya amrikaniyya.                      | هي امركانية.                |
| 6. She is Mrs. Farida.                                   | hiyya s-sayyida fariida.                | هي السيدة فريدة.            |
| 7. Are you Miss Amal?                                    | inti l-'aanisa amaal? .                 | انت الأنسة آمال؟            |
| 8. I am American also.                                   | ana amrikaani kamaan.                   | انا امركاني كمان.           |
| 9. It's been a pleasure meeting you. ('happy occasion')  | furša sa9iida.                          | فرصة سعيدة.                 |

Grammatical Notes

1. /atfaḍḍal/ is used for many situations; it may mean 'Come in', 'Sit down', 'Please go first', 'Please have some (food, drink)', 'Go ahead and ask (speak)'. Literally, it means 'be preferred', and is a command form. You will see the uses of this word in future lessons.

2. The suffixes for 'you' as a direct object are the same as for possession, /-ak/, /-ik/, and /-kum/. We used these endings in the phrase /aḷḷaah yisallimak, and now in /a9arrifak/. These endings when following a vowel have a slightly different form for two persons:

/bi-/ 'to':	/ahlan biik/	Ending: /-k/ (m)
	/ahlan biiki/	/-ki/ (f)

The plural suffix remains the same:

/ahlan biikum/	/-kum/ (p)
----------------	------------

The complete set of suffixes will be discussed in future lessons.

3. In Arabic, the literal expression is 'to introduce on' someone; this is an idiom.

4. When an adjective ends in /i/, the feminine ending is /-yya/:

/amrikaani/
/amrikaniyya/

The vowel /aa/ is usually shortened when the feminine ending is added, although some speakers keep it long.

5. Arabic titles, such as /as-sayyid/, /as-sayyida/, and /al-'aanisa/ are usually used with the definite article.
6. /atšarraft/ and /atšarrafna/ are actually passive verbs ('I am honored', etc.). They can be learned simply as vocabulary items at this point. This expression is more common in the Hijaz.
7. In the expression /atšarraft b-ma9rifatkum/, 'I'm honored by your acquaintance', note that the plural form may be used when speaking to one person. This is an honorific usage and shows respect. The expression /as-salaamu 9aleekum/ is used only in the plural form.
8. To ask a question which elicits a "yes" or "no" answer, simply raise your voice at the end of the sentence. Otherwise, it is a statement. (cf. Structure Sentence 7.)
9. /furša sa9iida/, 'happy occasion', may be used when meeting someone for the first time. The response is /ana as9ad/, 'I am happier'.

Drills

- |   |   |                           |
|---|---|---------------------------|
| 1. (to a man) Come in.                                | atfaḍḍal.                                     | اتفضل                     |
| Substitute:   |   |                           |
| (to a woman) Come in.                                 | <u>atfaḍḍali.</u>                             | اتفضلي                    |
| (to a group) Come in.                                 | <u>atfaḍḍalu.</u>                             | اتفضلوا                   |
| 2. (to a man) I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad. | aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyid aHmad.          | احب اعرفك على السيد احمد  |
| Substitute:   |   |                           |
| (to a woman) I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad.  | aHubb <u>a9arrifik</u> 9ala s-sayyid aHmad.   | احب اعرفك على السيد احمد  |
| (to a group) I'd like to introduce you to Mr. Ahmad.  | aHubb <u>a9arrifikum</u> 9ala s-sayyid aHmad. | احب اعرفكم على السيد احمد |
| 3. He is American.                                    | huwwa amrikaani.                              | هو امركاني                |
| Substitute:   |   |                           |
| she   | <u>hiyya amrikaniyya.</u>                     | هي امركانية               |
| 4. (to a man) I'm honored to make your acquaintance.  | atšarraft b-ma9rifatak.                       | اتشرفت بمعرفتك            |
| Substitute:   |   |                           |
| (to a woman) I'm honored to make your acquaintance.   | atšarraft b- <u>ma9rifatik.</u>               | اتشرفت بمعرفتك            |
| (to a group) I'm honored to make your acquaintance.   | atšarraft b- <u>ma9rifatkum.</u>              | اتشرفت بمعرفتكم           |

(to a group) We're honored to make your acquaintance.	atšarrafna b-ma9rifatkum.	انشرفنا بمعرفتكم.
(to a woman) We're honored to make your acquaintance.	atšarrafna b-ma9rifatik.	انشرفنا بمعرفتك.
(to a man) We're honored to make your acquaintance.	atšarrafna b-ma9rifatak.	انشرفنا بمعرفتك.

Situations

Translate into Arabic:

1.
  - A. Good morning. Welcome.
  - B. Thank you.
  - A. How are you?
  - B. Fine, thanks, and you?
  - A. I, too (thank God).
2.
  - A. Good evening.
  - B. Good evening.
  - A. How are all of you?
  - B. Well, thanks. When did you all arrive?
  - A. Yesterday.
  - B. Welcome back.
  - A. Thanks.
3.
  - A. I'd like you to meet Mr. Ahmad.
  - B. Pleased to meet you.
  - C. I'm honored.
  - A. Please sit down (you two).
  - B. Are you American?
  - C. Yes, I am American. I am from New York.

Classroom Vocabulary

drill	tamriin	تمرين
pen	galam	قلم
book	kitaab	كتاب
piece of paper	waraga	ورقة
notebook	daftar	دفتر
examination	imtiHaan	امتحان
lesson	dars	درس

Cultural Notes

1. Arabs always give visitors a warm welcome to their home or office, and may repeat welcoming phrases over and over.
2. First names are usually used in the Arab naming system, and unless they know our system of using last names, they may call you by your first name, too. Titles are used with first names as well.

LESSON 4

Dialogue

you (m) speak	titkallam	تتكلم
Arabic	9arabi	عربي
good, well	kwayyis	كويس
where	feen	فين
you (m) studied	darast	درست
A. You speak Arabic well. Where did you study?	inta titkallam 9arabi kwayyis. feen darast?	انت تتكلم عربي كويس؟ فين درست؟
I studied	darast	درست
in	fi	في
institute	ma9had	معهد
belonging to	Hagg	حق
government	Hukuuma	حكومة
American	amrikiyya	امريكية
B. I studied in an institute of the American government.	ana darast fil-ma9had Hagg al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya.	انا درست في معهد حق الحكومة الامريكية.
A. How long?	gaddees?	قديرا؟
approximately	Hawaali	حوالي
six	sitta	سنة
months	šuhuur	شهور
B. About six months.	Hawaali sitta šuhuur.	حوالي ستة شهور.
only	bass	بس.
not	muu	مو
possible	mumkin	ممکن
A. Only [that]? It's not possible!	bass? muu mumkin!	بس؟ مو ممکن!
well	ṭayyib	طيب
with	ma9a	مع
B. Well, goodbye. (‘with safety’)	ṭayyib, ma9a s-salaama.	طيب مع السلامة.
A. Goodby. (‘May God make you safe’)	aḷḷaah yisallimak.	الله يسلمك.

Structure Sentences

1. Where did they study?	feen darasu?	فين درسوا؟
2. We studied in school.	darasna fil-madrasa.	درسنا في المدرسة.
3. She studied in an institute.	darasat fi ma9had.	درست في معهد.
4. She spoke Arabic.	atkallamat 9arabi.	اتكلمت عربي.
5. Did you (p) speak English?	atkallamtu ingiliizi?	اتكلمتوا انكليزي؟
6. We arrived safely.	wa9alna bis-salaama.	وصلنا بالسلامة.
7. Where is the American institute?	feen al-ma9had al-amriiki?	فين المعهد الامريكي؟
8. He introduced Mr. Jones to Mr. Ahmad.	9arraf mistar Jones 9ala s-sayyid aHmad.	عرفت مستر جونز على السيد احمد.
9. How did he know?	keef 9irif?	كيف عرف؟
10. He studied the Arabic language.	daras al-lugha l-9arabiyya.	درس اللغة العربية.

Grammatical Notes

1. /kwayyis/ may be used as 'good' or 'well'; it alternates with /ṭayyib/, and is more used in the Hijaz. It is not a Saudi word; it was borrowed from the Egyptian dialect.

2. The perfect (past) tense of the verb expresses persons by using suffixes; it is known as the "suffix" tense. One type of regular verb is represented by /daras/, 'to study', and /9irif/, 'to know'. (There is no infinitive form, so verbs are cited in the 'he' form.) Forms are based on the 'he' form, and are listed in the traditional Arabic order of conjugation:

daras	he studied	9irif	he knew	عرف	درس
darasat	she studied	9irifat	she knew	عرفت	درست
darasu	they studied	9irifu	they knew	عرفوا	درسوا
darast	you (m) studied	9irift	you (m) knew	عرفت	درست
darasti	you (f) studied	9irifti	you (f) knew	عرفت	درست
darastu	you (p) studied	9iriftu	you (p) knew	عرفتوا	درسوا
darast	I studied	9irift	I knew	عرفت	درست
darasna	we studied	9irifna	we knew	عرفنا	درسنا

Note the regular shift in stress.

The forms for 'you (m)' and 'I' are the same.

/atkallam/, 'to speak' and /9arraf/, 'to introduce', represent another type of verb, in which the middle consonant is doubled:

atkallam	he spoke	9arraf	he introduced	عرف	اتكلم
atkallamat	she spoke	9arrafat	she introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamu	they spoke	9arrafu	they introduced	عرفوا	اتكلموا
atkallamt	you (m) spoke	9arraft	you (m) introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamti	you (f) spoke	9arrafti	you (f) introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamtu	you (p) spoke	9arraftu	you (p) introduced	عرفتوا	اتكلموا

atkallamt	I spoke	9arraft	I introduced	عرفت	اتكلمت
atkallamna	we spoke	9arrafna	we introduced	عرفنا	اتكلمنا

Note the regular shift in stress.

3. Arabic nouns are either masculine or feminine, including inanimate nouns. Almost all feminine nouns end in /-a/ and are easily recognized. (There are only a few nouns which end in /-a/ and are masculine; this is rare.)

The adjective and verb must agree in gender and number with the noun.

(masculine)	al-ma9had	al-amriiki	'the American institute'
(feminine)	al-Hukuuma	l-amrikiyya	'the American government'

4. The phrase /al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya/ is a definite noun phrase, 'the American government'. In Arabic, when the definite article /al-/ is used with the noun, it must also be used with the adjective; the literal translation would be 'the government the American'.

5. The word /Hagg/ changes if the noun it refers to is feminine or plural; it is used when referring to a definite noun.

(masculine)	al-ma9had	Hagg	al-Hukuuma	('institute')
(feminine)	al-madrasa	Haggat	al-Hukuuma	('school')
(plural)	al-kutub	Haggoon	al-Hukuuma	('books')

6. The words /amriiki/ and /amrikiyya/ are used here for 'American'. /amrikaani/ and /amrikaniyya/ refer to people (and some other nouns), while /amriiki/ and /amrikiyya/ are often reserved for abstract or inanimate nouns (although some speakers use them exclusively); they are more "classical". Note that the /ii/ in /amriiki/ is shortened when the feminine suffix is added.

7. /gaddees/ literally means 'what amount?', and can be used in other situations as well, referring not only to time, as here, but amounts of money, length, weight, etc.

8. The word /lugha/, 'language', is feminine, so the adjective must also be feminine:

al-lugha l-9arabiyya 'the Arabic language'

When the word /lugha/ is not used, a language is cited in the masculine form:

inta titkallam 9arabi kwayyis. 'You speak Arabic well.'

The phrase, /al-lugha l-9arabiyya/, 'the Arabic language', usually refers to Classical Arabic, not the colloquial dialects.

9. There is no indefinite article in Arabic (equivalent to 'a' or 'an' in English). (cf. Structure Sentence 3.)

#### Vocabulary Notes

Verbs (patterned like /daras/ and /9irif/)

daras	study	9irif	know	عرف	درس
fataH	open				فتح
gafal	close				غفل
katab	write				كتب
wa9al	arrive				وصل

Languages (These words are also nationalities; add /-yya/ for the feminine ending.)

lugha	language	لغة
9arabi	Arab, Arabic	عربي
ingiliizi	English	انكليزي
faransaawi	French	فرنساوي
asbaani	Spanish	اسباني
almaani	German	المانى
ruusi	Russian	روسي

Drills

For substitution drills, parts of the drill which may be substituted will be underlined. Cue words may be in English or in Arabic. The full response in Arabic will no longer be written out.

1. Where did you (m) study Arabic?      feen darast 9arabi?      فين درست عربي؟

Substitute:

you (f)  
you (p)  
when  
she  
French  
he  
Spanish  
where  
they  
you (m)  
Arabic

2. I studied in an institute.      darast fi ma9had.      درست في معهد.

Substitute:

we  
they  
school  
he  
she  
institute  
I

3. We spoke Arabic.      atkallamna 9arabi.      اتكلمنا عربي.

Substitute:

they  
German  
I  
Russian  
he  
we  
Arabic



4. They arrived safely.      waṣalu bis-salaama.      وصلوا بالسلامة.

Substitute:

we  
he  
she  
I  
you (f)  
you (p)  
we  
they

5. Mr. Robert is French.      as-sayyid Robert faransaawi.      السيد روبير فرنساوي.

Substitute:

Mrs. Marie  
Miss Marie  
German  
Mr. Robert  
Russian  
Are you (m) Russian?  
you (f)  
Arab  
I am Arab.  
American  
Mr. Robert  
French

6. How did you (m) know this?      keef 9irift haada?      كيف عرفت هادا؟

Substitute:

you (p)  
you (f)  
when  
you (m)  
how

7. When did they close the school?      mita gafalu l-madrasa?      متى فقلوا المدرسة؟

Substitute:

open  
you (m)  
the institute  
the books  
close  
you (f)  
they  
the school

8. Answer the questions:

Example:

min feen as-sayyid Ford? → huwwa amrikaani.

من فين السيد فورد؟  
هو امركاني.

Continue, substituting:

as-sayyid Brandt  
as-sayyida Farida  
as-sayyid Brezhnev  
as-sayyid Heath

Situations

Translate into Arabic:

1.
  - A. Where is John?
  - B. At school. He arrived yesterday.
  - A. Safely?
  - B. Yes, thank God.
  - A. How did you know?
  - B. From Ahmad.
  
2.
  - A. You speak English well.
  - B. I studied English in school. I studied French. too.
  - A. Are you from Jidda?
  - B. Yes, how did you know?
  
3.
  - A. Welcome. Have a chair.
  - B. Thanks.
  - A. You're welcome.
  - B. How long did you work in the government?
  - A. About six months.
  - B. I must be going now.
  - A. Go safely.
  - B. 'Thanks'. (response)
  
4.
  - A. Is she American?
  - B. Yes. I'd like to introduce you to Miss Jones.
  - A. I'm honored. When did you arrive?
  - B. Yesterday.
  - A. Where did you study Arabic?
  - B. I studied in school.

LESSON 5

Dialogue

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| A. Do you speak English?                            | inta titkallam ingiliizi?                    | انت تتكلم انكليزي؟                     |
| a little  | šwayya                                       | شويه                                   |
| much  | katiir                                       | كثير                                   |
| B. Yes, a little.<br>Not much.                      | iiwa, šwayya. muu katiir.                    | ايوه شويه .. مو كثير                   |
| you (m) tell  | tiguul                                       | تقول                                   |
| to me   | -li  | -لي                                    |
| what  | eeš  | ايش                                    |
| his name  | ismu   | اسمه                                   |
| A. Could you tell me what<br>'car' means in Arabic? | mumkin tigulli 'car' eeš<br>ismu bil-9arabi? | ممکن تقوللى "كار" ايش<br>اسمه بالعربي؟ |
| it means  | ya9ni  | يعني                                   |
| B. 'Car' means /sayyaara/<br>in Arabic.             | 'car' ya9ni sayyaara<br>bil-9arabi.          | "كار" يعني سيارة بالعربي               |
| A. Thank you.                                       | šukran.                                      | شكرا                                   |
| B. You're welcome.                                  | 9afwan.                                      | عفوا                                   |

Structure Sentences

- |                                   |                                    |                       |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. He speaks Arabic well.         | huwwa yitkallam 9arabi<br>kwayyis. | هو يتكلم عربي كويس    |
| 2. I speak French a little.       | ana atkallam faransaawi<br>šwayya. | انا اتكلم فرنساي شويه |
| 3. She wrote in Arabic.           | hiyya katabat bil-9arabi.          | هي كتبت بالعربي       |
| 4. What did they do<br>yesterday? | eeš sawwu ams?                     | ايش سؤوا امس؟         |
| 5. We wrote a lot.                | katabna katiir.                    | كتبنا كثير            |
| 6. The car is here.               | as-sayyaara hina.                  | السيارة هنا           |
| 7. The books are there.           | al-kutub hinaak.                   | الكتب هناك            |

Grammatical Notes

1. The imperfect (present) tense of the verb expresses persons by using mostly prefixes, sometimes prefix-suffix combinations; it is known as the "prefix" tense. Forms in the imperfect tense are also based on the 'he' form. The imperfect forms of /daras/ are /9irif/ are:

yidrus	he studies	yi9rif	he knows
tidrus	she studies	ti9rif	she knows
yidrusu	they study	yi9rifu	they know

tidrus	you (m) study	ti9rif	you (m) know
tidrusi	you (f) study	ti9rifi	you (f) know
tidrusu	you (p) study	ti9rifu	you (p) know
adrus	I study	a9rif	I know
nidrus	we study	ni9rif	we know

Note that the forms for 'she' and 'you (m)' are the same.

Verbs of the /kallam/ type:

yitkallam	he speaks	yi9arrif	he introduces
titkallam	she speaks	ti9arrif	she introduces
yitkallamu	they speak	yi9arrifu	they introduce
titkallam	you (m) speak	ti9arrif	you (m) introduce
titkallami	you (f) speak	ti9arrifi	you (f) introduce
titkallamu	you (p) speak	ti9arrifu	you (p) introduce
atkallam	I speak	a9arrif	I introduce
nitkallam	we speak	ni9arrif	we introduce

The imperfect tense is used to express action which is repetitive, e.g., 'he studies every day', and progressive, e.g., 'he is studying now'. This is further discussed in Lessons 25 and 36.

From now on, learn the perfect and imperfect tenses of these verbs together (do not guess; there may be variations in the vowels). Verbs will be cited in vocabulary lists in the 'he' form only.

2. By comparing words which share the same type of meaning, we notice that Arabic retains the same combination of consonants in the words, but changes vowel patterns and adds suffixes and prefixes. These inter-related patterns are predictable in Arabic and form categories of words. For example, /daras/, /yidrus/, and /madrasa/ (a school is a 'place of study') share the consonants /d-r-s/. Similarly, /atkallam/, /yitkallam/ and /kilma/ share /k-l-m/, and /katab/ is related to /kutub/, 'books'.

The three consonants on which most words are built are called the "root" of the word. The "root-pattern" system is basic to understanding how words are formed in Arabic, and will be expanded upon as we come to new categories. Keeping this principle in mind will help you guess and remember the meanings of many words.

3. To say 'in Arabic' or 'in English', etc., a phrase with /b-/ is used, and the definite article:

/bil-9arabi/	'by the Arabic'
/bil-ingiliizi/	'by the English'

This is an idiom.

4. /mumkin/ is an adjective meaning 'possible', introduced in the last lesson. It may also be used with a verb in the imperfect tense to mean 'Could you...?' or 'You may...', and as a form for a polite request, 'Would you...?'.

mumkin tigulli?	Could you tell me?
mumkin ti9arrif John 9ala aHmad?	Would you [please] introduce John to Ahmad?

5. Note that /tiguul/, 'you (m) tell', becomes /tigul-/ in combination with /-li/. This shortening of the vowel is explained in Lesson 7.

6. /ʔafwan/ may also mean 'sorry' or 'pardon', as used when interrupting or correcting someone, after coughing, etc.

Vocabulary Notes

Regular verbs (a)

daras, yidrus study  
fataH, yiftaH open  
gafal, yigfil close  
katab, yiktub write  
waʕal, yiwaʕal arrive

Regular verbs (i)

ʔirif, yiʔrif know عرف يعرف  
دارس يدرس  
فتح يفتح  
غفل يغفل  
كتب يكتب  
وصل يصل

Verbs with doubled medial consonant

atkallam, yitkallam speak  
ʔarraf, yiʔarrif introduce

اتكلم يتكلم  
عرف يعرف

Drills

1. Given the cue word in the imperfect tense, change it to perfect, and vice versa:

yiktub  
yiftaH  
nigfil  
yiʔrifu  
tiwaʕali  
adrus  
darasat  
katabtu  
(inta) gafalt  
waʕalna  
fataHu  
(ana) ʔirift

يكتب  
يفتح  
غفل  
يعرفوا  
توصلني  
ادرس  
دارست  
كتبوا  
(انت) قلت  
وصلنا  
فتحوا  
(انا) عرفت

2. You (m) speak English well.

inta titkallam ingiliizi  
kwayyis.

انت تتكلم انكليزي كويس

Substitute:

you (f)  
you (p)  
I  
know  
Arabic  
he  
she  
English  
speaks  
you (m)

3. Can you (m) speak Arabic?

mumkin titkallam  
ʔarabi?

ممکن تتكلم عربي؟

Substitute:

we  
French  
they  
I



2.  
A. Can you tell me where John is?  
B. At school.  
A. Does he know English?  
B. Not much...he's German.  
A. I understand.
3.  
A. I know English a little.  
B. Good. You speak well.  
A. Thanks. Where is the car?  
B. Here. The car belongs to the American government.  
A. Well, goodbye.  
B. Goodby.
4.  
A. I'm American.  
B. Welcome. From where in America?  
A. From New York. Have you heard of New York?  
(literally, 'Do you know New York?')  
B. Yes, a little.  
A. How did you arrive from the school?  
B. By car.

LESSON 6

Dialogue

A. Welcome. Come in.	ahlan. atfaḍḍal.	اهلا . اتفضل .
B. Thank you, ( 'I thank you (m) ' )	aškurak.	اشكر .
A. Excuse me...	9afwan...	عفواً . . .
B. Go ahead.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل .
A. What is your name?	eeš ismak?	اش اسمك ؟
name	ism	اسم
B. My name is John Smith. (word for direct address)	ismi John Smith. ya	اسمي جون سميت يا
A. Welcome, John.	ahlan wu sahlan ya John.	اهلا وسهلا يا جون .

Structure Sentences

1. They studied a lot.	humma darasu katiir.	هم درسوا كثير .
2. We know Mr. Smith well.	iHna ni9rif mistar Smith kwayyis.	احنا نعرف مستر سميت كويس .
3. He knows us, too.	huwwa yi9rifna kamaan.	هو يعرفنا كمان .
4. I know him a little.	ana a9rifu šwayya.	انا اعرفه شويه .
5. Excuse me (to a group).	9an iznakum.	عن اذنكم .
6. What's her name?	eeš ismaha?	ايش اسمها ؟
7. Where is their car?	feen sayyaarathum?	فين سيارتهم ؟
8. This is our school.	haadi madrasatna.	هادي مدرستنا .
9. We thank you all.	nuškurkum.	نشكركم .

Grammatical Notes

1. /aškurak/ is a variation for 'thank you'. It can be conjugated as a verb in the imperfect tense, and the person endings at the end can be varied. It is most often used in the 'I' and 'we' forms.

2. The full set of personal pronouns is:

he	huwwa	هو
she	hiyya	هي
they	humma	هم
you (m)	inta	انت
you (f)	inti	انتر
you (p)	intu	انتو
	ana	انا
	iHna	احنا



Personal pronouns are used most often in equational sentences, for example:

huwwa amrikaani.                      He is an American.  
 hiyya hina.                              She is here.

They may be used with verbs, but it is not necessary; their use may also make the sentence sound emphatic:

keef Haalak?                              How are you?  
 keef Haalak inta?                        How are you?

Do not overuse pronouns; you will notice that they are needed less in Arabic than in English.

3. Several types of pronouns in Arabic are suffixed to the end of words. Their forms may vary slightly, depending on the shape of the word to which they are suffixed.

A. The Direct Object Pronouns are:

him	-u	yi9rifu	He knows him.	يعرفه
her	-ha	yi9rifha	He knows her.	يعرفها
them	-hum	yi9rifhum	He knows them.	يعرفهم
you (m)	-ak	yi9rifak	He knows you (m).	يعرفك
you (f)	-ik	yi9rifik	He knows you (f).	يعرفكِ
you (p)	-kum	yi9rifkum	He knows you (p).	يعرفكم
me	-ni	yi9rifni	He knows me.	يعرفني
us	-na	yi9rifna	He knows us.	يعرفنا

Modifications:

(1) After a word which ends in two consonants, or which has a long vowel in the last syllable, /-a-/ is inserted before suffixes which begin with a consonant: /-ha/, /-hum/, /-kum/, /-ni/, /-na/:

9irift	I knew;	9iriftaha	I knew her.	عرفتها عرفتهم عرفتكم عرفتني عرفتنا
	you (m) knew	9iriftahum	I knew them.	
		9iriftakum	I knew you (p).	
		9iriftani	You (m) knew me.	
		9iriftana	You (m) knew us.	

(2) After a word which ends in a vowel, that vowel is lengthened and stressed before adding suffixes. In addition, a change occurs in the three suffixes which begin with a vowel, /-u/, /-ak/, /-ik/:

9irifna	we knew	9irifnaa	We knew him.	عرفناه عرفناهم عرفناها
		9irifnaahum	We knew them.	
		9irifnaaha	We knew her.	
yi9rifu	they know	yi9rifuu	They know him.	يعرفوه يعرفوني يعرفوكم يعرفوك يعرفوكِ
		yi9rifuuni	They know me.	
		yi9rifuukum	They know you (p).	
		yi9rifuuk	They know you (m).	
		yi9rifuuki	They know you (f).	

Note that the 'him' form is expressed by lengthening whichever vowel occurs, and switching stress to that syllable.

The distinction between 'you (m)' and 'you (f)' is made by the forms /-k/ and /-ki/.

(3) The verb form for 'they' in the perfect changes to the base form with /oo/ at the end, when used before suffixes, for example, /9irifoo-/:

9irifu	they knew	9irifoo	They knew him.	عرفوه
		9irifooha	They knew her.	عرفوها
		9irifoohum	They knew them.	عرفوهم
		9irifook	They knew you (m).	عرفوك
		9irifooki	They knew you (f).	عرفوكي
		9irifookum	They knew you (p).	عرفوكم
		9irifooni	They knew me.	عرفوني
		9irifoona	They knew us.	عرفونا

B. The Possessive Pronouns are:

his	-u	galamu	his pen	قلمه
her	-ha	galamha	her pen	قلمها
their	-hum	galamhum	their pen	قلمهم
your (m)	-ak	galamak	your (m) pen	قلمك
your (f)	-ik	galamik	your (f) pen	قلمك
your (p)	-kum	galamkum	your (p) pen	قلمكم
my	-i	galami	my pen	قلمي
our	-na	galamna	our pen	قلمنا

These suffixes are the same as the direct object pronoun suffixes, except for the 'my' form.

Modifications:

(1) For these suffixes also, when a word ends in two consonants or has a long vowel in the last syllable, /-a/ is inserted before those which begin with a consonant: /-ha/, /-hum/, /-kum/, /-na/:

ism	name	ismaha	her name	اسمها
		ismahum	their name	اسمهم
		ismakum	your (p) name	اسمكم
		ismana	our name	اسمنا
Haal	condition	Haalaha	her condition	حالتها
		Haalahum	their condition	حالتهم
		Haalakum	your (p) condition	حالتكم
		Haalana	our condition	حالتنا

(2) When a noun is feminine and ends in /-a/, a /-t-/ is inserted before the suffixes, resulting in /-at-/ before the suffix. The second-to-last syllable (before the /t/) is stressed.

madrasa	school	madrasátu	his school	مدرسته
		madrasátha	her school	مدرستها
		madrasáthum	their school	مدرستهم
		madrasátak	your (m) school	مدرستك
		madrasátik	your (f) school	مدرستك
		madrasátikum	your (p) school	مدرستكم
		madrasáti	my school	مدرستي
		madrasátna	our school	مدرستنا

ma9rifa	acquaintance	ma9rifatak	your (m) acquaintance	معرفةك
		ma9rifatik	your (f) acquaintance	معرفةك
		ma9rifatukum	your (p) acquaintance	معرفةكم

(3) When a noun ends in a vowel (other than the /-a/ of the feminine), the suffixes are the same as those of direct object pronouns after nouns ending in a vowel (see modification 2, on page 24) with the exception of the 'my' form, which is /-yya/:

kursi	chair	kursii	his chair	كرسيه
		kursiiha	her chair	كرسيها
		kursiihum	their chair	كرسيهم
		kursiik	your (m) chair	كرسيك
		kursiiki	your (f) chair	كرسيك
		kursiikum	your (p) chair	كرسيكم
		kursiyya	my chair	كرسيي
		kursiina	our chair	كرسينا

While this appears to be a great amount of material, with a little practice, you will see that relatively few variations need to be kept in mind. The main points of difference are:

1. If the word ends in two consonants or has a long vowel in the last syllable, add /-a-/ before the suffixes which begin with a consonant.
2. If the word ends in a vowel (other than the /-a/ of the feminine), lengthen it for 'him' or 'his', and use /-k/ and /-ki/ for 'you' and 'your' (m,f).
3. Remember to use /-at-/ after feminine nouns, before possessive endings.
4. Note the difference between /-ni/, 'me', and /-i/, 'my'.
4. /ya/ is called the "vocative particle"; it is used before a name or title to indicate that the speaker is addressing that person (similar to old English usage of "O", as in "O Lord..."). It may also be used with a noun, to mean a casual 'hey!', as in 'hey boy!'

Note that when using /ya/, a title does not have /al-/:

ya sayyid John  
ya aHmad  
ya aanisa

5. The three pronouns for 'this' are:

haada	this (m)	هادا
haadi	this (f)	هادي
hadool	these	هدول

Vocabulary Notes

<u>Masculine nouns</u>		<u>Feminine nouns</u>			
galam	pen	ghurfa	room	قلم	غرفة
kitaab	book	ṭarabiiza	table	كتاب	صريضة
baab	door	saa9a	watch, clock	باب	ساعة
kursi	chair	sayyaara	car	كرسي	سيارة
		maaṣa	desk		مائدة

Drills

1. I thank you (m).                      aṣkurak.                      اشكركَ.

Substitute:

We thank you (m).  
We thank you (f).  
We thank you (p).  
I thank you (p).  
I thank you (f).  
I thank them.  
I thank you (m).

2. With your (m)                      9an iznak.                      عن اذنكَ.  
    permission.

Substitute:

your (f)  
your (p)

3. He knows his name.                      huwwa yi9rif ismu.                      هو يعرف اسمه.

Substitute:

Does he know his name?  
my name  
He knows your (m) name.  
she  
her name  
they  
our name  
you (p)  
you (f)  
my name  
he  
his name

4. Where is their car?                      feen sayyaarathum?                      فين سيارتهم؟

Substitute:

our car  
his car  
her car  
her desk  
my desk  
my watch  
her watch  
your (m) watch  
your (m) book  
her book  
her room  
your (f) room  
their room  
their table  
your (p) table  
your (p) chair  
my chair  
his chair  
his car  
your (p) car  
their car

5. He knew him. huwwa 9irifu.

هو عرفه .

Substitute:

She knew him.  
She knew me.  
They knew me.  
They knew you (m).  
They knew you (f).  
I knew you (f).  
We knew you (f).  
We knew them.  
We knew you (f).  
She knew you (f).  
She knew him.  
He knew him.

6. I opened it. ana fatahtu.

انا فتحت .

Substitute:

We opened it.  
They opened it.  
They opened them.  
He opened them.  
He closed them.  
You (f) closed them.  
You (m) closed them.  
I closed them.  
I closed it.  
I opened it.

7. Given the cue word in Arabic, respond, saying 'This is a \_\_\_\_', and translate into English:

Example:

galam → haada galam.  
 sayyaara → haadi sayyaara.

قلم ← هادا قلم.  
 سيارة ← هاادي سيارة.

Continue:

ṭarabiiza  
 kursi  
 saa9a  
 kutub  
 kitaab  
 maaṣa  
 baab  
 madrasa  
 as-sayyid Smith  
 al-'aanisa Jones

طربيزة  
 كرسي  
 ساعة  
 كتب  
 كتاب  
 ماعة  
 باب  
 مدرسة  
 السيد سميث  
 الأناسة جونز

8. Given the cue phrase in English, respond, saying 'This is \_\_\_\_',  
 'These are \_\_\_\_':

Example:

my books → hadool kutubi.  
 his car → haadi sayyaaratu.

حدول كتبي .  
 هاادي سيارته .

Continue:

her room  
Is this your (m) pen?  
his watch?  
your (m) chair?  
These are their books.  
Are these your (p) books?  
This is my chair.  
my school  
Is this your (f) car?  
his name?  
These are our books.  
their room  
my desk

Situations

1.
  - A. Excuse me, is this your car?
  - B. Yes, it belongs to me.
  - A. Do these books belong to you too?
  - B. Yes, they are Arabic books.
  
2.
  - A. Can you open the door a little?
  - B. Is this too much?  
(literally, 'Is this much?')
  - A. No, that's good. (literally,  
'This is good.') Thanks.
  - B. You're welcome.
  
3.
  - A. Where is Ahmad?
  - B. Pardon?
  - A. Do you know where Ahmad is?
  - B. In his room.
  - A. Is this his watch?
  - B. No, his watch is on the table.
  
4.
  - A. (To a girl) Excuse me, are you American?
  - B. Yes, I'm from New York.
  - A. Did you study Arabic?
  - B. Yes, a little.
  - A. How long?
  - B. Six months.
  - A. You speak well.
  - B. Thanks.

LESSON 7

Dialogue

(Going through a doorway)

A. Go ahead.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل.
B. No, you go ahead. first	la', atfaḍḍal inta. al-awwal	لا، اتفضل انت. الاول
A. You first. OK thanked (m)	inta l-awwal. ṭayyib maṣkuur	انت الاول. طيب مشكور
B. OK, thanks... ('you (m) are thanked') family	ṭayyib, maṣkuur... 9eela	طيب مشكور... عيلة
A. How's the family? wife children they greet on you (m)	keef al-9eela? zawja awlaad yisallimu 9aleek	كيف العيلة؟ زوجة اولاد يسلموا عليك
B. My wife and children are fine, thank God. They greet you. after necessary I take leave now	zawjati w awlaadi ṭayyibiin, al-Hamdu lillaah, yisallimu 9aleek. ba9d laazim asta'zin al-Hiin	زوجتي واولادي طيبين الحمد لله يسلموا عليك. بعد لازم استأذن الحين
A. With your permission, I must be going now. ( 'take leave now' )	ba9d iznak, laazim asta'zin al-Hiin.	بعد اذنك لازم استأذن الحين.
B. It's early! by God (oath)	badri! waḷlah	بدري! ولله
A. No, (by God), I must.	la', waḷlah, laazim.	لا، والله لازم.
B. Go ahead.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل.

Structure Sentences

1. He told me his name.	galli ismu.	قال لي اسمه .
2. She told us where her house is.	gaalatlana feen beetaha.	فالتلنا فين بيتها .
3. I must write to my family.	laazim aktub li-9eelati.	لازم اكتب لعيلتي .
4. I thank you (p). ('You (p) are thanked.')	intu maškuuriin.	انتو مشكورين .
5. We must arrive early.	laazim niwšal badri.	لازم نوصل بدري .
6. They arrived first.	humma wašalu l-awwal.	هم وصلوا الاول .
7. They greeted me.	sallamu 9alayya.	سلموا علي .
8. I greeted them (i.e., shook hands) and then left.	sallamt 9aleehum w asta'zant.	سلمت عليهم واستأذنت .
9. May I use your car?	mumkin asta9mil sayyaaratak?	ممكن استعمل سيارتك؟
10. Yes, you (m) can use it.	iiwa, mumkin tista9milha.	ايوه ممكن تستعملها .
11. Have you (m) seen Ahmad?	šuft aHmad?	شفت احمد؟
12. I went home.	ruHt al-beet.	رحت البيت .

Grammatical Notes

1. /maškuur/ may be translated into English as 'thank you', although it literally means 'thanked' and is an adjective. The feminine and plural are regular: /maškuura/, /maškuuriin/. Note that the adjective refers to the person who is thanked, not the speaker.

2. /9eela/ is translated 'family'; it usually refers to one's immediate family-- either spouse and children, or parents, brothers and sisters if one is unmarried. The word /ahl/ is also used to mean immediate family or wife; it more often refers to the extended family.

3. /yisallimu 9aleek/, literally, 'they greet on you (m)', is an idiomatic expression, and is often added when commenting about someone else; it is part of the formula and may not be meant literally. It is common to respond to this with /allaah yisallimhum/ (or the response conjugated for the appropriate person).

4. The preposition /9ala/, 'on', may take possessive pronoun suffixes, which are formed in the regular way for a word ending in a vowel. The 'base' form to which suffixes are added is /9alee-/. Note that the 'I' form is irregular:

9alee	on him	عليه
9aleeha	on her	عليها
9aleehum	on them	عليهم
9aleek	on you (m)	عليك
9aleeki	on you (f)	عليكِ
9aleekum	on you (p)	عليكم
9alayya	on me	علي
9aleena	on us	علينا



5. /laazim/, 'necessary', may be used with verbs in the imperfect tense to mean 'must' or 'it is necessary...'. /laazim/ and /mumkin/ are examples of 'modals' or helping words which are used with verbs in the imperfect tense, and are quite numerous in Arabic.
6. /al-Hiin/, 'now', alternates freely with /daHHiin/, the latter being more urban and more common on the western coast.
7. Indirect object pronouns are used with the preposition /l-/, 'to', 'for', and are suffixed to the verb. The forms change slightly depending on the form of the verb. Basic forms are:

Indirect Object Pronouns:

to him (for him)	-lu
to her (for her)	-laha
to them (for them)	-lahum
to you (m) (for you)	-lak
to you (f) (for you)	-lik
to you (p) (for you)	-lakum
to me (for me)	-li
to us (for us)	-lana

These forms occur with a verb which ends in a consonant. Note that the words are stressed on the second-to-last syllable:

Perfect

(katab)

katablu	He wrote to him.	كتبه
katabláha	He wrote to her.	كتبها
katabláhum	He wrote to them.	كتبهم
katablak	He wrote to you (m).	كتبك
katablik	He wrote to you (f).	كتبك
katablakum	He wrote to you (p).	كتبكم
katabli	He wrote to me.	كتبتلي
katablána	He wrote to us.	كتبنا

(katabat)

katabátlu	She wrote to him.	كتبتله
katabatláha	She wrote to her.	كتبتلها
(etc.)		

Imperfect

(yiktub)

yiktúblu	He writes to him.	يكتبه
yiktubláha	He writes to her.	يكتبها
yiktubláhum	He writes to them.	يكتبهم
(etc.)		

(tiktab)

tiktúblu	She writes to him.	تكتبه
tiktubláha	She writes to her.	تكتبها
(etc.)		

(aktub)

aktúblu  
aktubláha  
(etc.)

I write to him.  
I write to her.

اكتبه  
اكتبها

(niktub)

niktúblu  
niktubláha  
(etc.)

We write to him.  
We write to her.

نكتبه  
نكتبها

Modifications:

(1) When the verb ends in two consonants, an /a/ is placed before the suffix. The first /a/ in the four long suffixes is dropped; they become /-lha/, /-lhum/, /-lkum/ and /-lna/.\* Note that stress also shifts.

(katabt)

katabtálu  
katabtálha  
katabtálhum

You (m) wrote to him;  
I wrote to him.  
You (m) wrote to her;  
I wrote to her.  
You (m) wrote to them;  
I wrote to them.

كتبته  
كتبها  
كتبهم

katabtáalak  
katabtáalik  
katabtáalkum

I wrote to you (m).  
I wrote to you (f).  
I wrote to you (p).

كتبتك  
كتبتك  
كتبلكم

katabtáli  
katabtálna

You (m) wrote to me.  
You (m) wrote to us.

كتبني  
كتبنا

\*There is a widely-used alternative form in which the suffix begins with /-all-/. This will be noted for your recognition only, not for learning. (It is more common in north Hijaz):

katabtállu  
katabtállaha  
katabtállahum

كتبته  
كتبها  
كتبهم

katabtállak  
katabtállik  
katabtállakum

كتبتك  
كتبتك  
كتبلكم

katabtállli  
katabtálllana

كتبني  
كتبنا

(2) When a verb ends in a vowel, that vowel is lengthened and stressed:

Perfect

(katabu)\*

kataboolu  
kataboolaha  
kataboolahum

They wrote to him.  
They wrote to her.  
They wrote to them.

كتبوه  
كتبوها  
كتبولهم

kataboolak  
kataboolik  
kataboolakum

They wrote to you (m).  
They wrote to you (f).  
They wrote to you (p).

كتبوك  
كتبوك  
كتبولكم

katabooli	They wrote to me.	كُتِبَ لِي
kataboolana	They wrote to us.	كُتِبَ لَنَا

\*Remember the rule about changing the vowel to /oo/ (rule 3, page 25.)

Imperfect

(yiktubu)

yiktubuulu	They write to him.	يَكْتُوبُهُ
yiktubuulaha (etc.)	They write to her.	يَكْتُوبُهَا

(tik tubi)

tiktubiilu	You (f) write to him.	تَكْتُبِيهِ
tiktubiilaha (etc.)	You (f) write to her.	تَكْتُبِيهَا

(tik tubu)

tiktubuulu	You (p) write to him.	تَكْتُوبُهُ
tiktubuulaha (etc.)	You (p) write to her.	تَكْتُوبُهَا

These processes are repetitive and become automatic with a little use; you will not have to give them active thought for long. When in doubt, use the basic forms; you will still be understood.

8. Verbs on the pattern of /gaal/, 'he said', appear to have only two consonants, although the long vowel in the middle covers another "root" consonant, a /w/ or /y/. Which consonant it is usually becomes evident in the imperfect tense. These verbs are "hollow" verbs, and there are three possible patterns:

	A.		B.		C.
gaal	yiguul	'say'	jaab	yijiib	'bring'
			naam	yinaam	'sleep'
	(root: g-w-l)		(root: j-y-b)	(root: n-w-m)	

Type (A) has a short /u/ in some person forms; type (B) has short /i/, and type (C) may have /u/ or /i/. Type (C) is rare.

(A)	huwwa	gaal	yiguul	يقول	قال
	hiyya	gaalat	tiguul	تقول	قالت
	humma	gaalu	yiguulu	يقولوا	قالوا
	inta	gult	tiguul		قلتُ
	inti	gulti	tiguuli		قلتِ
	intu	gultu	tiguulu	وا	قلتم
	ana	gult	aguul		قلتُ
	iHna	gulna	niguul		قلنا
(B)	huwwa	jaab	yijiib	يجيب	جاب
	hiyya	jaabat	tijiib	تجيب	جابت
	humma	jaabu	yijiibu	يجيبوا	جابوا
	inta	jibt	tijiib	تجيب	جبتُ
	inti	jibti	tijiibi	تجيبين	جبتِ
	intu	jibtu	tijiibu	تجيبوا	جبتوا
	ana	jibt	ajiib	اجيب	جيتُ
	iHna	jibna	nijiib	تجيب	جينا

(C)	huwwa	naam	yinaam	ينام	نام
	hiyya	naamat	tinaam	تنام	نامت
	humma	naamu	yinaamu	يناموا	ناموا
	inta	numt	tinaam	تنام	تمت
	inti	numti	tinaami	تنامي	تمت
	intu	numtu	tinaamu	تناموا	تمتوا
	ana	numt	anaam	انام	نمت
	iHna	numna	ninaam	ننام	نمتا

9. Hollow verbs shorten their long vowel before a suffix which begins with /l/ (the indirect object):

gaal	+	-li	→	galli	He told me.
tiguul	+	-li	→	tigulli	You (m) tell me.

10. Verbs like /asta'zan/, 'to take leave', and /asta9mal/, 'to use', are composed of a base verb with a prefix /-sta-/ which varies slightly, depending on the tense and person:

huwwa	asta'zan	yista'zin	يستأذن	استأذن
hiyya	asta'zanat	tista'zin	تستأذن	استأذنت
humma	asta'zanu	yista'zinu	يستأذنون	استأذنوا
inta	asta'zant	tista'zin	تستأذن	استأذنت
inti	asta'zanti	tista'zini	تستأذنين	استأذنتن
intu	asta'zantu	tista'zinu	تستأذنون	استأذنتوا
ana	asta'zant	asta'zin	استأذن	استأذنت
iHna	asta'zanna	nista'zin	نستأذن	استأذنا
huwwa	asta9mal	(root: '-z-n)		استعمل
hiyya	asta9malat	yista9mil		استعملت
	(etc.)	tista9mil		
		(root: 9-m-l)		

11. /beet/ means 'house', but in certain expressions is better translated into English as 'home':

al-beet	the house
raaH al-beet	He went to the house.
	He went home.
fil-beet	in the house
	at home

12. Note that /raaH/, 'to go', is used with a direct object:

raaH al-beet.	He went [to] the house.
---------------	-------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

Hollow verbs

/-sta-/ verbs

gaal, yiguul (gult)	say	asta'zan, yista'zin	take leave, ask permission	قال يقول (قلت)
raaH, yiruuH (ruHt)	go	استأذن يستأذن		راح يروح (رحلت)
šaaf, yišuuuf (šuft)	see			شاف يشوف (شفت)
kaan, yikuun (kunt)	be	asta9mal, yista9mil	use	كان يكون (كنت)
jaab, yijiib (jibt)	bring	استعمل يستعمل		جاب يجيب (جبت)
naam, yinaam (numt)	sleep			نام ينام (نمت)

<u>Masculine nouns</u>	<u>Feminine nouns</u>	<u>Plural nouns</u>
ahl أهل family	9eela علة family	awlaad اولاد children*
zawj زوج husband	zawja زوجة wife	
walad ولد son	bint بنت daughter	

\*Another common word for 'children' is /bazuura/.

Drills

1. Give the appropriate response to the cue sentence.

Example:

ahMad yisallim 9aleek. → aḷḷaah yisallimu · الله يسلمه ← احمد يسلم عليك.

Continue:

humma yisallimu 9aleek.	هم يسلموا عليك.
zawji yisallim 9aleek.	زوجي يسلم عليك.
zawjati tisallim 9aleeki.	زوجتي تسلم عليك.
awlaadi yisallimu 9aleekum.	اولادي يسلموا عليكم.
waladi yisallim 9aleek.	ولدي يسلم عليك.

2. I must be going now. laazim asta'zin al-Hiin. لازم استأذن الحين.

Substitute:

we  
early  
I  
now  
they  
he

3. May I use your (m) book? mumkin asta9mil kitaabak? ممكن استعمل كتابك؟

Substitute:

this (m)  
the word  
we  
this (f)  
his book  
she  
I  
your (m) book

4. I went home. ruHt al-beet. رحت البيت.

Substitute:

she  
to school  
they  
early  
we  
you (f)  
there  
he  
often ('much')  
home  
I

5. You (m) must go early. laazim tiruuH badri.

لازم تروح بدري.

Substitute:

I  
now  
we  
to school  
he  
they  
there  
you (f)  
you (m)  
early

6. I saw him at home. šuftu fil-beet.

شفتة في البيت

Substitute:

I saw her  
she saw me  
they saw me  
we saw them  
he saw him  
you (m) saw them?  
you (f) saw them?  
you (f) saw him?  
you (p) saw him?  
I saw him

7. He brought his son. jaab waladu.

جاب ولده .

Substitute:

He brought his family.  
He brought them.  
I brought them.  
Did you (f) bring them?  
Did you (f) bring the children?  
Did you (f) see the children?  
Did they see the children?

8. He excused himself early. huwwa asta'zan badri.

هو استأذن بدري.

Substitute:

I  
we  
she  
used the car  
the pen  
we  
he

9. Translate the following sentences:

You (m) must see Ahmad.  
You (m) must bring your son.  
You (p) must bring your son.

We must see him often ('much').  
They must go now.  
I must bring my book.  
I may bring my book.  
I may say the word.  
He may say the sentence.  
He may sleep there.  
He must be here.  
You (m) must sleep now.  
You (m) must see Ahmad.

Situations

1.  
A. May I introduce my wife to you?  
B. With pleasure. How do you do? (literally, 'Welcome')  
C. (wife) I'm honored. Excuse me, what is your name?  
B. Mr. Ahmad. When did you arrive here?  
C. Yesterday.  
A. We arrived from New York.
2.  
A. Where are the children?  
B. At home. My son went home early.  
A. Does he speak Arabic?  
B. A little. He studied it in school.  
A. With your permission, I must leave now.  
B. Go ahead.
3.  
A. Did you greet him?  
B. Yes, I greeted him. I know him well. And his family.  
A. Where are they from?  
B. From here. I know where their house is.
4.  
A. What did you (p) do in school?  
B. We wrote in Arabic. I wrote my name in English, too.  
A. Is the school good?  
B. Yes, it's good.  
A. Can you close the door please?  
B. OK.  
A. Thanks.  
B. You're welcome.

Cultural Notes

1. Arabs are extremely conscious of "manners" and "politeness" as they define these concepts. Among good manners is the attempt, even if merely in form, to have others precede you through a doorway. You, as an American, will seldom win--give in graciously and go first, but only after a token gesture of declining.

2. The act of "greeting" someone is also essential to good manners. It could be considered offensive if you forget to greet someone even in a large crowd, or in an office where you are visiting a co-worker, for example. Sometimes you see the casual "Goodby everybody" type of leave-taking, but just as often, people say goodby to everyone individually before they leave, with a few polite phrases and a handshake.

3. The word /zawjati/, 'my wife', is not used as freely in Arabic as in English, especially when talking to another man. Instead, /al-9eela/, 'the family', or /al-jamaa9a/, 'the group', may be substituted. It is considered too direct for you to inquire about someone's wife; try "How is your family?" instead.

4. /wallah/, 'by God', is an example of an oath used for emphasis. Oaths are used frequently, and there are many varieties. You will recognize them because they begin with /wa-/, here translated as 'I swear by...', followed by a religious reference such as 'By God'.



LESSON 8

Dialogue

A. Muhammad!	ya muhammad!	يا محمد!
B. Yes?	na9am.	نعم.
I ask	as'al	اسأل
question	su'aal	سؤال
A. May I ask a question?	mumkin as'al su'aal?	ممکن اسأل سؤال؟
B. Go ahead.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل.
that (m)	hadaak	هذاك
man	rijjaal	رجال
A. Who is that man?	miin hadaak ar-rijjaal?	مين هذاك الرجال؟
not	ma	ما
I know	adri	ادري
not	muu	مو
B. I certainly don't know. He's not from here.	waḷlah ma adri. huwwa muu min hina.	ولله ما ادري. هو مو من هنا.
A. I don't know either.	ana kamaan ma adri.	انا كمان ما ادري.

Structure Sentences

1. I took the money.	axadt al-fuluus.	اخذت الفلوس.
2. Who is that lady?	miin hadiik as-sitt?	مين هديك الست؟
3. Where are those people from?	min feen haadolaak an-naas?	من فين هادولاك الناس؟
4. Where are your brothers?	feen axwaanak?	فين اخوانك؟
5. The boy asked about you (p).	al-walad sa'al 9annakum.	الولد سأل عنكم.
6. The boy asked about you (p).	al-walad sa'al 9aleekum.	الولد سأل عليكم.
7. They left.	mišyu.	مشبوا.

Grammatical Notes

1. /na9am/ means 'yes' in Classical Arabic, and is often used to acknowledge being spoken to. If used as a question, /na9am?/, it means 'pardon, please repeat what you said'.

2. The three pronouns for 'that' are:

hadaak	that (m)	هَدَاك
hadiik	that (f)	هَدِيِك
hadolaak	that (p)	هَدُوْلَاك

They may be used alone; when used to modify a noun, the noun must be definite (this also applies to the words for 'this, these'). The pronoun may be used before or after the noun.

hadaak ar-rijjaal	that man
ar-rijjaal hadaak	that man
hadiik as-sitt	that lady

3. /muu/, 'not', and its variations are used to negate an equational sentence or a predicate. The full set of forms is:

huwwa	muu (mahu)	مُو
hiyya	mahi	مَهِِي
humma	mahum	مَهِم
inta	manta*	مَنْتَا
inti	manti	مَنْتِي
intu	mantu	مَنْتُو
ana	mana	مَنَا
iHna	maHna	مَنْنَا

huwwa muu min hina.	He is not from here.
hiyya mahi	She is not American.
amrikaniyya.	
haada muu mumkin.	This is not possible.
haada muu laazim.	This is not necessary.

\*Alternative forms in common use in northern Hijaz are:

inta	mannak	مَنْنَاك
inti	mannik	مَنْنِيك
intu	mannakum	مَنْنَاكُم
ana	manni	مَنْنِي
iHna	mannna	مَنْنَانَا

/ma/ is used with verbs; it will be discussed further in Lesson 17.

4. /kamaan/ means 'also' in affirmative sentences, and 'either' in negative sentences (this is a problem of translation due to English structure; in Arabic, you simply say 'I don't know too'.)

5. /sa'al/ and /axad/ are examples of verbs which contain the glottal stop /'/' as a root consonant. You will note that /axad/ is slightly irregular in the imperfect tense (the /'/' is replaced by a vowel):

sa'al	سَأَلَ	yis'al	يَسْأَلُ	(root: s-'-l)
axad	أَخَذَ	yaaxud	يَأْخُذُ	(root: '-x-d)

6. /9an/, 'about, regarding', when suffixed with a pronoun, has the base form /9ann-/:

9annu	about him	عنه
9annaha	about her	عنها
9annahum	about them	عنهم
9annak	about you (m)	عنك
9annik	about you (f)	عنك
9annakum	about you (p)	عنكم
9anni	about me	عني
9annana	about us	عنا

7. Verbs like /diri/ and /miši/ which end in /-i/ have a special form for certain perfect suffixes:

huwwa	diri	دري	miši	مشي
hiyya	diryat	درت	mišyat	مشيت
humma	diryu	درتوا	mišyu	مشوا
inta	diriit	درت	mišiit	مشيت
inti	diriiti	درتي	mišiiti	مشيتي
intu	diriitu	درتوا	mišiitu	مشوا
ana	diriit	درت	mišiit	مشيت
iHna	diriina	درنا	mišiina	مشينا

8. /sa'al/, 'to ask', may be used with /9an/ or /9ala/ (see Structure Sentences 5 and 6).

Vocabulary Notes

Nouns

rijjaal	man	رجال
sitt	lady, woman	ست
walad	boy, son	ولد
bint	girl, daughter	بنت
axx*	brother	أخ
uxt	sister	أخت
abb*	father	أب
umm	mother	أم
axwaan	brothers, brothers and sisters	أخوان
axwaat	sisters	أخوات

\*The forms for 'brother' and 'father' are irregular when used with pronouns; the base forms become /axu-/ and /abu-/:

axuu	his brother	abuu	his father
axuuha	her brother	abuuha	her father
axuuhum	their brother	abuuhum	their father
axuuk	your (m) brother	abuuk	your (m) father
axuuki	your (f) brother	abuuki	your (f) father
axuukum	your (p) brother	abuukum	your (p) father
axuuya	my brother	abuuya	my father
axuuna	our brother	abuuna	our father

Verbs

diri, yidri (diriit)	know	(دررت)	درري يدري
miši, yimši (mišiit)	go	(مشيت)	مشي يمشي
axad, yaaxud	take		اخذ ياخذ
sa'al, yis'al	ask		سال يسأل

Place Names

(Note that some place names in Arabic contain the definite article /al-/)

jidda	Jidda	جدة
ar-riyaaḍ	Riyadh	الرياض
makka	Mecca	مكة
al-madiina	Medina	المدينة
aṭ-ṭaayif	Taif	التائف
tabuuk	Tabuk	تبوك
aḏ-ḏahraan	Dhahran	الظهران
ad-dammaam	Dammam	دمام
al-xobar	Al-Khobar	الخبر

Drills

1. May I ask a question?      mumkin as'al su'aal?      ممكن اسأل سؤال؟

Substitute:

huwwa	هو
iHna	اجنا
axad haada	اخذ هادا
humma	هم
hiyya	هي
al-kitaab	الكتاب
al-kursi	الكرسي
hadaak	هداك
ana	اننا
sa'al su'aal	سال سؤال

2. Who is that man?      miin hadaak ar-rijjaal?      مين هداك الرجال؟

Substitute:

sitt	ست
naas	ناس
bint	بنت
walad	ولد
haada	هادا
awlaad	اولاد
sitt	ست
rijjaal	رجال
hadaak	هداك

3. He is not American      huwwa muu amerikaani.      هو مو امركاني.

Substitute:

here  
she  
French  
my sister  
Saudi  
from Taif  
he  
from Medina  
from Mecca  
American

4. This is not possible. haada muu mumkin. هادا مو ممكن.

Substitute:

much  
 necessary  
 early  
 a sentence  
 my watch  
 my brothers and sisters  
 a school  
 my school  
 her pen  
 possible

5. I don't know where he is from. ma adri huwwa min feen. ما ادري هو من فين.

Substitute:

when she arrived  
 who they are  
 where the notebook is  
 how long he studied English  
 what her name is  
 who these belong to

6. Given the sentence in the affirmative, change it to negative:

inta min hina?  
 intu faahmiin?  
 hiyya almaniyya.  
 al-madrassa Haggat al-Hukuma.  
 haada laazim.  
 ahli fir-riyaaq.

انت من هنا؟  
 انتو فاهمين؟  
 هي المانية.  
 المدرسة حقة الحكومة.  
 هادا لازم.  
 اهلي في الرياض.

Situations

1.
  - A. This is my book.
  - B. Pardon me. It belongs to this girl. Your book isn't here.
  - A. Maybe Ahmad took it. He was here.
  - B. I don't know. I can ask him.
  - A. Please.
2.
  - A. Good morning.
  - B. Good morning. Welcome back.
  - A. Thanks.\* How is your family?
  - B. Well, thank God. My brothers and sisters send their greetings.
  - A. Thanks.\*

\*These are, of course, not literal translations of the appropriate Arabic responses.

3.
  - A. Where is his brother from?
  - B. I don't know; not from here.
  - A. Maybe he's from Riyadh. What's his name?
  - B. Ahmad.
  - A. Where does he study now?
  - B. In a government school.

LESSON 9

Dialogue

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| A. Hello.   | ahlan.   | اهلا .                                      |
| B. Hello. We've missed you.   | ahlan, waHaštana.                                      | اهلا . وحشتنا .                             |
| more  | aktar  | اكثر  |
| health  | šihHa  | صحة   |
| A. I've missed you, too. ('you more') How is your health?           | w inta aktar. keef šihHatak?                           | وانت أكثر . كيف صحتك ؟                      |
| conditions  | aHwaal   | احوال                                       |
| if God wills  | in šaa' allaah   | ان شاء الله                                 |
| B. Fine, and how are you (p)? Fine, I hope? ('Fine, if God wills?') | šayyib, wu keef aHwaalakum? šayyibiin, in šaa' allaah? | طيب . وكيف احوالكم ؟<br>صيبين ان شاء الله ؟ |
| happy   | mabsuuṭ  | ميسوط                                       |
| A. Fine, thanks.  | mabsuuṭiin, al-Hamdu lillaah.                          | ميسوطيين الحمد لله .                        |
| B. I must be going now. you reach the morning                       | laazim asta'zin daHHiin. tišbaH                        | لازم استأذن رحين .<br>تصبح                  |
| A. OK, good night. ('May you reach morning well')                   | tišbaH 9ala xeer.                                      | تصبح على خير .                              |
| B. Good night. ('And you are among those people')                   | w inta min ahlu.                                       | وانت من اهله .                              |

Structure Sentences

- |                                |                                  |                           |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. This man is happy.          | haada r-rijjaal mabsuuṭ.         | هادا الرجال ميسوط .       |
| 2. This girl is not happy.     | haadi l-bint mahi mabsuuṭa.      | هادي البنت مهي ميسوطه .   |
| 3. These people are not happy. | hadool an-naas mahum mabsuuṭiin. | هدول الناس مهي ميسوطيين . |
| 4. I am tired.                 | ana ta9baan.                     | انا تعبانا .              |
| 5. This woman is tired.        | haadi s-sitt ta9baana.           | هادي الست تعبانا .        |
| 6. We are tired.               | iHna ta9baaniin.                 | احنا تعبانيين .           |
| 7. This woman is pretty.       | haadi s-sitt Hilwa.              | هادي الست حلوة .          |
| 8. These woman are pretty.     | hadool as-sittaat Hilwiin.       | هدول الستات حلوين .       |

- |                            |                          |                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| 9. This boy is big.        | haada l-walad kabiir.    | هادا الولد كبير.   |
| 10. These boys are big.    | hadool al-awlaad kubaar. | هدول الاولاد كبار. |
| 11. The chairs are pretty. | al-karaasi Hilwa.        | الكراسي حلوة.      |
| 12. The chairs are pretty. | al-karaasi Hilwiin.      | الكراسي حلوين.     |

Grammatical Notes

1. The plural form of nouns cannot be predicted in Arabic. Some take as the plural suffix /-iin/ (the regular masculine plural, used for most males or mixed gender, especially professions), or /-aat/(the regular feminine plural, for most females or inanimate nouns). But at least half have a "broken" plural, which consists of changed vowel patterns among the root consonants. These are hard to predict, and must be learned one by one as you come to them. Some examples, using nouns learned thus far:

<u>/-iin/ plural</u>	<u>/-aat/ plural</u>		<u>Broken plural</u>	
(no examples yet)	imtiHaan, imtiHaanaat	امتحانات	waraga, awraag	اوراق
	lugha, lughaat	لغات	jumla, jumal	جمل
	sitt, sittaat	ساعات	kitaab, kutub	كتب
	Hukuuma, Hukuumaat	حكومات	tamriin, tamaariin	تمارين
	saa9a, saa9aat	ساعات	galam, aglaam	اقلام
	ṭarabiiza, ṭarabiizaat	طربيزات	daftar, dafaatir	دفاتر
	sayyaara, sayyaaraat	سيارات	dars, duruus	دروس
	(almost regular:)		ma9had, ma9aahid	معاهد
	bint, banaat.	بنات	madrasa, madaaris	مدارس
	kilma, kalimaat	كلمات	baab, abwaab	ابواب
			ghurfa, ghuraf	غرف
			walad, awlaad	اولاد
			rijjaal, rijaal	رجال
			su'aal, as'ila	اسئلة
			Haal, aHwaal	احوال
			ism, asaami	اسامي
			9eela, 9awaayil	عوائل

From now on, irregular noun plurals will be given with the singular form. Regular plurals will simply be marked as /-iin/ or /-aat/ after the singular form.

2. In Arabic, the adjective always matches the noun it modifies in gender and number (see examples in the Structure Sentences). Thus:

mabsuut	happy (m)	مبسوط
mabsuuṭa	(f)	مبسوطة
mabsuuṭiin	(p)	مبسوطين
ta9baan	tired (m)	تعبان
ta9baana	(f)	تعبانة
ta9baaniin	(p)	تعبانين
ṭayyib	good (m)	طيب
ṭayyiba	(f)	طيبة
ṭayyibiin	(p)	طيبين
maṣkuur	thanked (m)	مشكور
maṣkuura	(f)	مشكورة
maṣkuuriin	(p)	مشكورين

Note that if the adjective has the form CVCVC (single consonants and short vowels), it will lose the second vowel before the suffixes:

wiHiš	bad (m)	وحش
wiHša	(f)	وحشة
wiHšiin	(p)	وحشين

If the plural is an inanimate noun, the adjective may be used as plural or may be feminine singular (with /-a/) (see Structure Sentences 11 and 12). The latter use is considered "classicized" (see cultural note below.)

3. Most plural adjectives take the suffix /-iin/. Some, however, have a "broken" plural pattern. Broken adjective plurals are simpler than those of nouns; most of them have a predictable vowel form. If the singular pattern is:

$$C_1aC_2iiC_3$$

the plural pattern will be:

$$C_1uC_2aaC_3$$

kabiir, kubaar	big
ṣaghiir, ṣughaar	small

4. /waHaštana/, 'We missed you', is a structure expressed exactly backwards from the English expression, literally, 'You (actor) caused-to-miss us (object). It is usually used in the perfect tense, although it may be translated past or present in English.

Examples:

waHaštuuni	I missed you (p).	وحشتوني
waHaštuuna	We missed you (p).	وحشتونا
waHaštiini	I missed you (f).	وحشتيني
waHašoona	We missed them.	وحشونا
waHašatni	I miss her.	وحشني
waHašni	I miss him.	وحشني

### Vocabulary Notes

#### Adjectives

#### Broken plurals

kabiir, kubaar	big
ṣaghiir, ṣughaar	small
jadiid, judud	new
gadiim, gudum	old
ṭawiil, ṭuwaal	tall
gaṣiir, guṣaar	short
tagiil, tuḡaal	heavy
xafiif, xufaaf	lightweight
laṭiif, luṭaaf	nice, pleasant

#### Regular plurals

ṭayyib, -iin	good	طيب -ين
wiHiš, -iin	bad, ugly	وحش -ين
muhimm, -iin	important	مهم -ين
Hilu, -wiin	pretty	حلو -ين



Drills

1. We missed you (m).

waHaštana.

وحشتنا .

Substitute:

We missed her.  
We missed him.  
We missed them.  
I missed them.  
I missed you (m).  
I missed you (f).  
We missed you (f).  
We missed you (m).

2. How is your (m) health?

keef siHHatak?

كيف صحتك؟

Continue:

(to a woman)  
(to a group)

3. Good night.

tišbaH 9ala xeer.

صبح على خير.

Continue:

(to a woman)  
(to a group)

4. Good night (response).

w inta min ahlu.

وانت من اهله .

Continue:

(to a woman)  
(to a group)

5. Given the sentence in the singular, change it to plural:

al-bint Hilwa.  
as-su'aal muhimm.  
as-sayyaara jadiida.  
al-kitaab tagiil.  
al-walad mabsuut.  
haada xafiif.

البنيت حلوة.  
السؤال مهم.  
السيارة جديدة.  
الكتاب ثقيل.  
الولد مسوط.  
هاذا خفيف.

6. This man is happy.

haada r-rijjaal mabsuut.

هاذا الرجال مسوط.

Substitute:

as-sitt  
as-sittaat  
ta9baan  
al-walad  
aHmad  
kabiir  
humma  
šaghiir  
uxti  
iHna  
inta  
huwwa  
mabsuut  
inti  
šawiil

الست  
الستات  
تعبان  
الولد  
احمد  
كبير  
هم  
صغير  
اختي  
احنا  
انت  
هو  
مسوط  
انت  
ضويل

intu  
gaṣiir  
hiyya  
laṭiif  
ar-rijjaal  
mabsuut

انتو  
قصير  
هي  
لطيف  
الرجال  
مبسوط

7. The chairs are pretty. al-karaasi Hilwiin.

الكراسي حلوة

Substitute:

kursi  
xafiif  
kutub  
kitaab  
muhimm  
as-su'aal  
kwayyis  
as-saa9a  
wiHiš  
al-ghurfa  
Hilu  
al-aglaam  
hadool  
jadiid  
al-karaasi  
Hilu

كرسي  
خفيف  
كتب  
كتاب  
مهم  
السؤال  
كوييس  
الساعة  
وحش  
الغرفة  
حلو  
الأفلام  
هدول  
جديد  
الكراسي  
حلو

#### Situations

1.
  - A. Have you seen your brother?
  - B. No, I miss him very much.
  - A. Where is he now?
  - B. He is in the government.
  - A. You have to introduce him to me.
  - B. I will. (literally, 'if God wills')
2.
  - A. Good evening.
  - B. Good evening.
  - A. Can you tell me, who are these people?
  - B. I don't know. I can ask my father; he knows them.
  - A. Please. Thank you. ('You are thanked')
  - B. You're welcome.
3.
  - A. Is this book good?
  - B. No, it's very bad. It's old.
  - A. Who wrote it?
  - B. We don't know.
  - A. Well, I must be going. Good night.
  - B. Good night.

#### Cultural Notes

1. There are many situations in which Classical Arabic structures may be used in speaking colloquial Arabic. Usually such "classicisms" have a colloquial equivalent, but are used for emphasis or eloquence. Whenever a classicism appears in this course, it will be noted as such.
2. /in Ṣaa' allaah/, 'if God wills', is always used when referring to a future action. It may have numerous translations in English, depending on the situation.

LESSON 10

Review all dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. Can you tell me, when  
did you arrive?

mumkin tigulli, mita  
waṣalt?

ممكن تقوللي متى وصلت؟

Substitute:

How is he?  
What is this word in Arabic?  
Can I introduce you to Mr. Jones?  
What is her name?  
Where are your brothers and sisters?  
Does he understand English?  
Where is your book?  
Whom did you see there?  
With whom did he go?

2. May I be excused?

mumkin asta'zin?

ممكن استأذن؟

Substitute:

use this pen?  
speak English?  
open the car?  
do that?  
write the questions?  
take the small chair?  
see your car?

3. I asked about him.

sa'alt 9annu.

سألت عن .

Substitute:

greeted the woman.  
told him.  
asked your father.  
talked to them.  
went to Riyadh.  
arrived early.

(Repeat, using 'he', 'she', 'you (p)', 'we'.)

4. Answer the questions:

eeṣ ismak?  
inta min feen?  
mita waṣalt hina?  
inta ingiliizi?  
inta titkallam 9arabi?  
feen darast?  
madrasatak Haqqat al-Hukuuma?  
fataht kitaabak?  
'Notebook' eeṣ ismu bil-9arabi?  
haada galamak?  
inta ta9baan ṣwayya?

ايش اسمك؟  
انت من فين؟  
متى وصلت هنا؟  
انت انكليزي؟  
انت تتكلم عربي؟  
فين درست؟  
مدرستك حقة الحكومة؟  
فتحت كتابك؟  
"نوتبوك" ايش اسمه بالعربي؟  
هأدا قلامك؟  
انت تعبان شويه؟

LESSON 11

Dialogue

(In an office)

	you (honorific)	Haḍratak	حضرتك
A.	Who are you?	miin Haḍratak?	مين حضرتك؟
B.	My name is Abdel-Rahman.	ismi 9abd ar-raḥmaan.	اسمي عبد الرحمن.
	you (m) work	tiṣtaghil	تشتغل
A.	Where do you work?	feen tiṣtaghil?	فين تشتغل؟
	ministry	wizaara	وزارة
	external	xaarijiyya	خارجية
B.	In the Foreign Ministry.	fi wizaarat al-xaarijiyya.	في وزارة الخارجية.
A.	Are you Saudi?	inta su9uudi?	انت سعودي؟
	of course	ṭab9an	طبعا
B.	Yes, of course. I'm from here, from Jidda.	iiwa ṭab9an. ana min hina, min jidda.	ايوه طبعا. انا من هنا، من جدة.
A.	Welcome.	ahlan wu saḥlan.	اهلا وسهلا.
B.	Thank you.	ahlan biik.	اهلا بيك.

Structure Sentences

1.	In which ministry does he work?	yiṣtaghil fi ayy wizaara?	يشتغل في اي وزارة؟
2.	In which school do you study?	tidrus fi ayy madrasa?	تدرس في اي مدرسة؟
3.	Bring any book.	jiib ayy kitaab.	جيب اي كتاب.
4.	He is from Jidda.	huwwa jiddaawi.	هو جداوي.
5.	Where is Mecca Road?	feen ṭariig makka?	فين طريق مكة؟
6.	The American government is big.	Hukuumat amriika kabiira.	حكومة امريكا كبيرة.
7.	The Philips company is important.	Ṣarikat filibs muhimma.	شركة فليبس مهمة.

Grammatical Notes

1. /Haḍratak/ (/Haḍratik/), literally, 'your presence', may be used as an honorific title, substituting for /inta/ or /inti/. It is often used with persons older than yourself or of high rank. You will also hear /ṭaal 9umrak/ (/ṭaal 9umrik/), literally, 'May your life be lengthened', especially in the Najd, and for royalty.

For older people, /ya 9ammi/, 'my uncle', and /ya xaalati/, 'my aunt', are commonly heard as well. An older or respected man may be addressed as /ya šeex/, 'sheikh', and it need not imply that this is an official title.

2. /aštāghal, yištāghil/, 'to work', is the most common word, but /9amal, yi9mil/ is often heard to mean 'to work, to do' (it is more classicized).

3. /ayy/, 'which', is used before a noun. It is not declined. In a question, it means 'which?', and in a statement it means 'any'.

4. /jiddaawi/ is another adjective of the /-i/ type. For a noun which ends in a vowel, /-aawi/ is suffixed to make an adjective. This pattern is used especially often for adjectives of place origin, though it is by no means limited to them. (Not all place names can be made adjectives; you say /min/ + place.)

Most of these adjectives take the /-yiin/ plural suffix (but do not generalize without seeing it first; some nationality adjectives are irregular). The feminine form is always predictable, /-yya/.

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u> (regular)		
su9uudi	سعودي	-yiin		Saudi
najdi	نجدي	-yiin		Najdi
Hijaazi	حجازي	-yiin		Hijazi
yamaani	يمني	-yiin		Yemeni
faransaawi	فرنساوي	-yiin		French
iṭaali	ايطالي	-yiin		Italian
amriiki	امريكي	-yiin		American
yabaani	ياباني	-yiin		Japanese
		(irregular)		
badawi	بدوي	badu	بدو	Bedouin
9arabi	عربي	9arab	عرب	Arab
amrikaani	امريكاني	amrikaan	امريكان	American
turki	تركي	atraak	اتراك	Turk
asbaani	اسباني	asbaan	اسبان	Spanish
almaani	المانى	almaan	المان	German
ingiliizi	انكليزي	ingiliiz	انكليز	English
ruusi	روسي	ruus	روس	Russian
ajnabi	اجنبي	ajaanib	اجانب	foreign

5. Structures like /wizaarat al-xaarijiyya/ and /Hukuumat amriika/ are examples of nouns placed in a "construct". A construct consists of two or more nouns placed together, to express possession (or 'of' in English):

wizaara	ministry
wizaarat al-xaarijiyya	Ministry of External [Affairs] (literally, 'ministry the-external')
Hukuuma	government
Hukuumat amriika	the government of America (literally, 'government America')
ism ar-rijjaal	the man's name

More than two nouns may be placed in a construct:

ṭariig wizaarat al-xaarijiyya	road of the Foreign Ministry (literally, 'road ministry the-external')
----------------------------------	---

Note that feminine nouns which end in /-a/ replace this suffix with /-at/ when part of a construct.

The entire construct phrase is either definite ('the') or indefinite ('a, an') depending on the last noun:

ism ar-rijjaal                    the man's name

ism rijjaal                      a man's name

The first and middle nouns cannot be marked as definite (with /al-/), but they are usually translated definite:

ṭariig al-wizaara                the road of the ministry

Proper nouns (names) and nouns which have a possessive ending are grammatically definite, so they occur only as the last item of a construct:

sayyaarat aHmad                 Ahmad's car

sayyaarat axuuya                my brother's car

ṭariig makka                    Mecca Road

Other examples of constructs:

haada maktab ṣarika.            This is a company's office.

haada maktab aṣ-ṣarika.        This is the company's office.

haadi gunṣuliyyat  
safaara.                          This is an embassy's consulate.

haadi gunṣuliyyat  
as-safaara.                        This is the embassy's consulate.

As a review, remember that there is an important structural difference between "constructs" and noun phrases (nouns + adjectives):

Hukuumat amriika                the government of America

al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya         the American government  
(literally, 'the government the American')

ṣarika amrikiyya                an American company  
(literally, 'company American')

The constructs are patterned:

indefinite Noun + definite Noun  
indefinite Noun + indefinite Noun

whereas the noun phrases are patterned:

definite Noun + definite Adjective  
indefinite Noun + indefinite Adjective

Other examples:

Constructs:

maḏiinat jidda                    the city of Jidda

ṭariig al-maṭaar                 Airport Road

ṣarikat an-nuur                  the light company

Noun Phrases:

as-safaara l-amrikiyya	the American Embassy
al-madrasa l-amrikiyya	the American school
al-jeeš as-su9uudi	the Saudi army

Vocabulary Notes

Nouns

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>		
safaara	-aat	embassy	سفارة -ات
wizaara	-aat	ministry	وزارة -ات
šarika	-aat	company	شركة -ات
madiina	mudun	city	مدينة مدن
maṭaar	-aat	airport	مطار -ات
ṭariig	ṭurug	road	طريق طرق
gunṣuliyya	-aat	consulate	قنصلية -ات
maktab	makaatib	office	مكتب مكاتب

Verbs

aštaghal, yištaghil	work	اشتغل يشتغل
9amal, yi9mil	work, do	عمل يعمل

Names of Countries

amriika	America	امريكا
almaanya	Germany	المانيا
ingiltera	England	انكلترا
faraansa	France	فرانسا
asbaanya	Spain	اسبانيا
ruusya	Russia	روسيا
al-yabaan	Japan	اليابان

The ministries in Saudi Arabia are:

wizaarat al-xaarijiyya	Foreign Ministry
wizaarat ad-daaxiliyya	Interior Ministry
wizaarat al-ma9aarif	Ministry of Education (literally, 'knowledge')
wizaarat at-tijaara	Ministry of Commerce and Industry
w aš-šinaa9a	
wizaarat al-muwaasalaat	Ministry of Communications
wizaarat ad-difaa9	Ministry of Defense and Aviation
w aṭ-ṭayaraan	
wizaarat al-i9laam	Ministry of Information
wizaarat az-ziraa9a	Ministry of Agriculture
wizaarat al-maaliyya	Ministry of Finance
wizaarat al-9amal w aš-šu'uun	Ministry of Labor and Social Affairs
al-ijtimaa9iyya	
wizaarat al-batroot	Ministry of Petroleum and Minerals
w al-ma9aadin	
wizaarat al-9adl	Ministry of Justice
wizaarat al-Hajj	Ministry of Pilgrimage
w al-awgaaf	and Endowments

In ordinary conversation, ministries with double names are usually referred to by the first title only.

Drills

1.  
 A. In which ministry do you work?      tiṣṭaghil fi ayy wizaara?      تشتغل في اي وزارة؟  
 B. In the Foreign Ministry.      fi wizaarat al-xaarijiyya.      في وزارة الخارجية.

Continue:

in the Ministry of Interior  
 in the Ministry of Defense  
 in the Ministry of Education  
 in the Ministry of Communications  
 in the Ministry of Finance  
 in the Ministry of Commerce  
 in the Ministry of Labor  
 in the Ministry of Information  
 in the Ministry of Agriculture

2.  
 A. Where is he from?      huwwa min feen?      هو من فين؟  
 B. He's from the city of Jidda.      huwwa min madiinat jidda.      هو من مدينة جدة.

Continue:

from Taif  
 from the city of Riyadh  
 from Mecca  
 from the city of New York  
 from Medina  
 from Dhahran  
 from the city of Chicago  
 from Tobuk  
 from Dammam  
 from Jidda

3. I am from Jidda.      ana min jidda.      انا من جدة.

Substitute:

Germany  
 England  
 America  
 Spain  
 Russia  
 Japan  
 France

4. Given the name of the country, respond with the nationality.

Example: humma min amriika. → humma amrikaan.      هم من امريكا ← هم امريكان.

Continue:

humma min almaanya.	هم من ألمانيا.
humma min ruusya.	هم من روسيا.
humma min faraansa.	هم من فرنسا.
humma min asbaanya.	هم من اسبانيا.
humma min al-yabaan.	هم من اليابان.
humma min ingiltera.	هم من انكلترا.
humma min amriika.	هم من امريكا.



5. They work in the school. humma yištaghilu fil-madrasa. هم يشتغلوا في المدرسة.

Substitute:

an office  
the light company  
the airport  
the Ministry of Interior  
the communications office  
an American company  
the German embassy  
Raytheon company  
in Riyadh  
the American consulate

6. I saw a tall man there. suft rijjaal ṭawiil hinaak. شفت رجال طويل هناك.

Substitute:

a pretty chair  
a big table  
those pens  
new books  
important people  
the Foreign Ministry  
a good road  
the old embassy  
[some] foreigners  
[some] Italians  
[some] Bedouins

7. Given the statement in the indefinite, change it to definite:

9amal fi šarika amrikiyya. عمل في شركة أمريكية.  
haadi sayyaarat wizaara. هادي سيارة وزارة.  
hadooḷ tamaariin dars هادول تمارين درسين.  
darast fi ma9had kabiir. درست في معهد كبير.  
haadi safaarat Hukuuma. هادي سفارة حكومة.

8. Given the sentence in the singular, change it to plural:

al-wizaara kabiira. الوزارة كبيرة.  
al-maṭaar jadiid. المطار جديد.  
al-kitaab wiḥiṣ. الكتاب وحنين.  
as-sitt qaṣiira. الست قصيرة.  
al-imtiHaan ṭayyib. الامتحان طيب.  
aṭ-ṭarabiiza ṣaḡhiira. الطرييزة صغيرة.  
al-bint mabsuṭa. البنت مبسوطة.  
as-sayyaara gadiima. السيارة قديمة.

### Situations

1.
  - A. Can you (honorific) tell me, where is the Ministry of Education?
  - B. That's not here in Jidda. It's in Riyadh.
  - A. I understand, thank you.
  - B. You're welcome.

2.

- A. There are many foreigners here.  
B. Yes, they work in companies.  
A. Are there French here?  
B. Yes, of course. There is a French Embassy.  
A. I saw Germans too.  
B. Yes. You see many people in Jidda.

3.

- A. Come in. When did you (p) arrive?  
B. Yesterday. We arrived at the airport in the evening.  
A. Welcome back.  
B. Thanks. Where is your father?  
A. He went to the office.  
B. I hope to see him there. (literally, 'If God wills, I [will] see him there.')

A. I hope so. (literally, 'If God wills.')

LESSON 12

Dialogue

hour	saa9a	ساعة
how many	kam	كم
A. Please, what time is it?	min faqlak, as-saa9a kam?	من فضلك الساعة كم؟
three	talaata	ثلاثة
B. It's three o'clock.	as-saa9a talaata.	الساعة ثلاثة.
I was late	at'axxart	اتأخرت
very	marra	مرة
A. I'm very late.	ana marra at'axxart.	انا مرة متأخرت.
but	laakin	لاكن
still	lissa9	لسم
early	badri	بدري
B. A little. But it's still early. Go safely.	swayya. laakin lissa9 badri. ma9a s-salaama.	شويه . لآكن نسم . بدري مع السلامة.
safety	amaan	آمان
A. In the safety of God.	fi amaan illaah.	في آمان الله .

Structure Sentences

1. It's four-thirty.	as-saa9a arba9a wu nuṣṣ.	الساعة أربعة ونعم.
2. It's 1:15.	as-saa9a waḥda wu rub9.	الساعة واحدة وربع.
3. It's 7:45 ('eight minus a quarter')	as-saa9a tamanya illa rub9.	الساعة ثمانية الأ ربع .
4. I have to meet Ahmad.	laazim agaabil aḥmad.	لازم آقابل آحمد .
5. He's very nice.	huwwa marra laṭiif.	هو مرة لطيف.
6. We are very happy.	iḥna marra mabsuṭiin.	آحنا مرة مبسوطين .
7. She is very tall.	hiyya ṭawiila jiddan.	هي طويلة جدا .
8. I have to count them.	laazim a9iddahum.	لازم آعدهم .
9. He is still here.	huwwa lissa9 hina.	هو لسم هنا .
10. What are you doing now?	eeṣ tisawwi daḥḥiin?	آيش تسوي دآحين؟
11. I answered him.	raddeet 9alee.	رديت عليه .

Grammatical Notes

1. Numbers one through twelve are:

waaHid (feminine, waHda)	one	(واحدة) واحد
itneen	two	اثنين
talaata	three	ثلاثة
arba9a	four	اربعة
xamsa	five	خمسة
sitta	six	سنة
sab9a	seven	سبعة
tamanya	eight	ثمانية
tis9a	nine	تسعة
9ašara	ten	عشرة
iHqa9š	eleven	إحدى عشر
itna9š	twelve	اثنت عشر

2. Expressions for telling time are:

as-saa9a arba9a.	It's four o'clock.
as-saa9a sab9a.	It's seven o'clock.
as-saa9a arba9a wu nušš.	It's 4:30. ('four and a half')
as-saa9a arba9a wu rub9.	It's 4:15. ('four and a quarter')
as-saa9a arba9a illa rub9.	It's 3:45. (four minus a quarter')

Note that the feminine form /waHda/ is used to modify /saa9a/.

The expressions for 'a.m.' and 'p.m.' are:

aš-šubuH	a.m.
al-masa	p.m.
as-saa9a talaata š-šubuH.	It's 3:00 a.m.
as-saa9a xamsa l-masa.	It's 5:00 p.m.

Without the time phrase, the expressions are:

fis-subuH	in the morning
fil-masa	in the evening

3. /marra/ is used before an adjective or verb to mean 'very'. 'Very' may also be expressed with the phrase /bil-marra/ (after the adjective) or /jiddan/ (after the adjective). /jiddan/ is classical, and the most emphatic. (cf. Structure Sentences 5, 6, and 7.)

4. /lissa9/ has several uses in Arabic. When used before a predicate (other than a verb), it means 'still':

huwwa lissa9 walad šaghiir.	He is still a small boy.
al-kitaab lissa9 jadiid.	The book is still new.

(Other uses of this word will be discussed in Lesson 26.)

5. /sawwa, yisawwi/, 'to make, to do', is an example of a verb which ends in a vowel. This type of verb, as well as verbs in which the last consonant is "doubled", have different suffixes in the perfect tense (similar to those we saw for /diri/ and /miš/i/):

Perfect  
(ends in /-a/)

Imperfect

huwwa sawwa  
hiyya sawwat  
humma sawwu

yisawwi  
tisawwi  
yisawwu

يسوّى  
تسوّى  
يسوّوا

سوّى  
سوّت  
سوّوا

inta sawweet  
inti sawweeti  
intu sawweetu

tisawwi  
tisawwi  
tisawwu

تسوّى  
تسوّى  
تسوّوا

سوّيت  
سوّيت  
سوّيتوا

ana sawweet  
iHna sawweena

asawwi  
nisawwi

اسوّى  
نسوّى

سوّيت  
سوّينا

(doubled)

huwwa Habb  
hiyya Habbat  
humma Habbu

yiHubb  
tiHubb  
yiHubbu

يحب  
تحب  
يحبوا

حب  
حبت  
حبوا

inta Habbeet  
inti Habbeeti  
intu Habbeetu

tiHubb  
tiHubbi  
tiHubbu

تحب  
تحب  
تحبوا

حببت  
حببت  
حببتوا

ana Habbeet  
iHna Habbeena

aHubb  
niHubb

احب  
نحب

حببت  
حببنا

Doubled verbs (like /Habb/, /9add/) may have either the vowel /u/ or /i/ in the imperfect:

Habb, yiHubb  
9add, yi9idd

6. /gaabal/, yigaabil/, 'to meet', is an example of a verb which contains a long /aa/:

Perfect

Imperfect

huwwa gaabal  
hiyya gaabalat  
humma gaabalu

yigaabil  
tigaabil  
yigaabilu

يقابل  
تقابل  
يقابلوا

قابل  
قابلت  
قابلوا

inta gaabalt  
inti gaabalti  
intu gaabaltu

tigaabil  
tigaabili  
tigaabilu

تقابل  
تقابل  
تقابلوا

قابلت  
قابلت  
قابلتوا

ana gaabalt  
iHna gaabalna

agaabil  
nigaabil

اقابل  
نقابل

تابنت  
قابلنا

7. /radd/, 'to answer', is used with the preposition /9ala/, 'on', before the object:

raddeet 9alee

I answered him.  
(literally, 'I answered on him.')

laazim nirudd 9aleeha.

We must answer her.

8. You have now had all of the major types of verbs.

Summary of Verb Conjugations

(1) Regular (a)

daras	yidrus	jibt	tijiib
darasat	tidrus	jibti	tijiibi
darasu	yidrusu	jibtu	tijiibu
darast	tidrus	jibt	ajiib
darasti	tidrusi	jibna	nijiib
darastu	tidrusu		
darast	adrus	naam	yinaam
darasna	nidrus	naamat	tinaam
		naamu	yinaamu

(2) Regular (i)

9irif	yi9rif	numt	tinaam
9irifat	ti9rif	numti	tinaami
9irifu	yi9rifu	numtu	tinaamu
9irift	ti9rif	numt	anaam
9irifti	ti9rifi	numna	ninaam
9iriftu	ti9rifu		
9irift	a9rif		
9irifna	ni9rif		

(3) Weak Initial Consonant

axad	yaaxud	miš <i>ī</i>	yimš <i>ī</i>
axat	taaxud	mišyat	timš <i>ī</i>
axlu	yaaxudu*	mišyu	yimš <i>ū</i>
axadt	taaxud	miš <i>ī</i> it	timš <i>ī</i>
axadti	taaxudi*	miš <i>ī</i> iti	timš <i>ī</i>
axadtu	taaxudu*	miš <i>ī</i> itu	timš <i>ū</i>
axadt	aaxud	miš <i>ī</i> it	amš <i>ī</i>
axadna	naaxud	miš <i>ī</i> ina	nimš <i>ī</i>

\*These forms are often shortened to /yaaxdu, taaxdi, taaxdu/.

(4) Weak Medial Consonant ("Hollow")

gaal	yiguul	sawweet	asawwi
gaalat	tiguul	sawweena	nisawwi
gaalu	yiguulu		
gult	tiguul		
gulti	tiguuli		
gultu	tiguulu		
gult	aguul		
gulna	niguul		
jaab	yijiib		
jaabat	tijiib		
jaabu	yijiibu		

(5) Weak Final Consonant (i)

miš <i>ī</i>	yimš <i>ī</i>
mišyat	timš <i>ī</i>
mišyu	yimš <i>ū</i>
miš <i>ī</i> it	timš <i>ī</i>
miš <i>ī</i> iti	timš <i>ī</i>
miš <i>ī</i> itu	timš <i>ū</i>
miš <i>ī</i> it	amš <i>ī</i>
miš <i>ī</i> ina	nimš <i>ī</i>

(6) Weak Final Consonant (a)

sawwa	yisawwi
sawwat	tisawwi
sawwu	yisawwu
sawweet	tisawwi
sawweeti	tisawwi
sawweetu	tisawwu

(7) Final Consonant Doubled

Habb	yiHubb
Habbat	tiHubb
Habbu	yiHubbu
Habeet	tiHubb
Habeeti	tiHubbi
Habeetu	tiHubbu
Habeet	aHubb
Habeena	niHubb

9add	yi9idd	(9) <u>Contain /aa/</u>	
9addat	ti9idd		gaabal yigaabil
9addu	yi9iddu		gaabalat tigaabil
			gaabalu yigaabilu*
9addeet	ti9idd		gaabalt tigaabil
9addeeti	ti9iddi		gaabalti tigaabili*
9addeetu	ti9iddu		gaabaltu tigaabilu*
9addeet	a9idd		
9addeena	ni9idd		gaabalt aqaabil
(8) <u>Medial Consonant Doubled</u>			gaabalna nigaabil
9arrafa	yi9arrif	These forms are often shortened to	
9arrafat	ti9arrif	/yigaablu, tigaabli, tigaablu/.	
9arrafu	yi9arrifu	(10) <u>Contain /-sta-/</u>	
9arraft	ti9arrif		asta'zan yista'zin
9arrafti	ti9arrifi		asta'zanat tista'zin
9arraftu	ti9arrifu		asta'zanu yista'zinu
9arraft	a9arrif		asta'zant tista'zin
9arrafn	ni9arrif		asta'zanti tista'zini
			asta'zantu tista'zinu
			asta'zant asta'zin
			asta'zanna nista'zin

Vocabulary Notes

Verbs

(hollow)

saab, yisiib (sibt) leave behind ساب يسيب (سبت)  
 šaal, yišiiil (šilt) carry شال يشيل (شلت)

(ending in /i/)

nisi, yinsa (nisiit) forget نسي ينسى (نسيت)

(ending in /a/)

sawwa, yisawwi (sawweet) do سوو يسوو (سوويت)

(doubled)

Habb, yiHubb (Habbeet) like, love حب يحب (حببت)  
 radd, yirudd (raddeet) answer رد يرد (ردبت)  
 Haṭṭ, yiHuṭṭ (Haṭṭeet) put حط يحط (حطبت)  
 9add, yi9idd (9addeet) count عد يعد (عدبت)

/aa/

gaabal, yigaabil meet قابل يقابل

(Other)

at'axxar, yit'axxir be late اتأخر يتأخر

Drills

1. One plus three  
equals four.

waaHid zaayid talaata  
yisaawi\* arba9a.

واحد زايد ثلاثة يساوي  
اربعه.

Continue:

2 + 4	8 + 3	5 + 2
5 + 3	7 + 2	6 + 6
3 + 3	2 + 3	7 + 1

\*Note the difference between /yisaawi/, 'equals' and /yisawwi/, 'he does'.

2. Three minus one  
equals two.

talaata naagiş waaHid  
yisaawi itneen.

ثلاثة ناقص واحد يساوي  
اثنين.

Continue:

4 - 1	10 - 2	12 - 8
6 - 2	11 - 6	9 - 2
9 - 4	8 - 1	11 - 3

3. It's three o'clock.

as-saa9a talaata.

الساعة ثلاثة.

Substitute:

5:30	7:30	3:45
8:00	6:00	9:00
2:15	12:00	8:45
1:45	11:15	

4. I am very late.

ana marra at'axxart.

انا مرة اتأخرت.

Substitute:

huwwa	هو
iHna	احنا
hiyya	هي
humma	هم
al-awlaad	الأولاد
ana	انا

5. This is very pretty.

haada Hilu jiddan.

هاذا حلو جدا.

Substitute:

muhimm	مهم
an-naas	الناس
al-kitaab	الكتاب
aş-Şarika	الشركة
gadiim	قديم
al-madiina	المدينة
haada l-baab	هاذا الباب
aţ-ţarabiiza	الطريزة
xafiif	خفيف
Hilu	حلو
haada	هاذا



6. He is still here.

huwwa lissa9 hina.

هو لسح هنا.

Substitute:

important  
new  
she  
we  
tired  
very tired  
you (m)  
small (young)  
the young lady ('miss')  
the company  
new  
car  
bad  
he  
here

7. What did you (m) do?

ees sawweet?

ايهر سويت؟

Substitute:

you (f)  
she  
forget  
he  
we  
like  
you (p)  
they  
put here  
he  
you (p)  
she  
answer  
you (m)  
they  
when  
leave  
she  
we  
you (p)  
he  
they

8. He carried the boy.

šaal al-walad.

شال الولد.

Substitute:

I  
she  
we  
the books  
you (m)  
forgot  
you (p)  
he  
left  
they  
you (f)  
the watch

she  
liked  
I  
they

9. What are you (m) doing? ees tisawwi?

ايشر تسوي؟

Substitute:

you (p)  
she  
he  
you (f)  
they  
you (m)

Situations

1.
  - A. He went late.
  - B. I know. That's not good.
  - A. He arrived at 3:30, very late.
  - B. What time is it now?
  - A. 3:45.
  - B. Is your watch new?
  - A. Yes, and it's good, too.
2.
  - A. Excuse me, may I ask a question?
  - B. Of course, go ahead.
  - A. Where is the American Embassy?
  - B. You have to go from Medina Road.
3.
  - A. This car is brand new, right?
  - B. Yes. It's my brother's car.
  - A. It's very pretty.
  - B. Thanks.
  - A. I've missed your brother.
  - B. He has missed you, too. He sends you his greetings.

Cultural Notes

1. Arabs generally have a more flexible attitude about time than Americans do. While they do make appointments and attempt to keep them, frequently apologizing for being late, there is also a longer period of time within which a person may arrive late before the other person loses patience. Sometimes appointments are made for an "approximate" time; in this case, you may expect someone to come as much as an hour late.

LESSON 13

Dialogue

	you came	jiit	جيت
	kingdom	mamlaka	مملكة
A.	When did you come to the kingdom?	mita jiit al-mamlaka?	متا جيت المملكة؟
	day	yoom	يوم
	days	ayyaam	ايام
B.	Monday. Three days ago.	yoom al-itneen. gabl talaata ayyaam.	يوم الاثنين. قبل ثلاثة ايام.
	house	beet	بيت
A.	Where is your house?	feen beetak?	فين بيتك؟
	living	saakin	ساكن
	street	šaari9	شارع
	fourteen	arba9ta9š	اربعتمش
B.	I live on 14th Street.	ana saakin fi šaari9 arba9ta9š.	انا ساكن في شارع اربعتمش.
	far	ba9iid	بعيد
A.	Is it far from here?	ba9iid min hina?	بعيد من هنا؟
	near	gariib	قريب
B.	No, it's near here.	la', gariib min hina.	لا. قريب من هنا.

Structure Sentences

1.	We came a long time ago. ('from a long time')	jiina min zamaan.	جيننا من زمان.
2.	They live on Gabil Street.	humma saakniin fi šaari9 gaabil.	هم ساكنين في شارع قابل.
3.	Have you (m) been in Jidda long? ('For you much in Jidda?')	lak katiir fi jidda?	لك كثير في جدة؟
4.	I have been here five days. ('For me here five days')	liyya hina xamsa ayyaam.	لي هنا خمسة ايام.
5.	She lives near our house.	hiyya saakna gariib min beetana.	هي ساكنة قريب من بيتنا.

- |   |                                      |                            |
|---|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 6. She lives far from our house.        | hiyya saakna ba9iid<br>9an beetana.  | هي ساكنة بعيد عن بيتنا     |
| 7. I took 1,000 dollars from my father. | ana axadt alf dulaar<br>min abuuaya. | انا اخذت الف دولار من ابوي |
| 8. What is your (m) address?            | eeṣ 9inwaanak?                       | ايش عنوانك؟                |

Grammatical Notes

1. /jaa/, 'to come', is an irregular verb:

Perfect

huwwa jaa  
hiyya jaat  
humma joo

inta jiit  
inti jiiti  
intu jiitu

ana jiit  
iHna jiina

Imperfect

yiji  
tiji  
yiju

tiji  
tiji  
tiju

aji  
niji

جي	جا
جات	جات
جوا	جوا
جي	جيت
جات	جيت
جوا	جيتوا
اجي	جيت
نجي	جينا

2. The full name of the country is /al-mamlaka l-9arabiyya s-su9uudiyya/, 'the Saudi Arabian Kingdom'. Abbreviations are often used, /al-mamlaka/ or /as-su9uudiyya/.

3. Days of the week are:

as-sabt	Saturday
al-aHad	Sunday
al-itneen	Monday
at-taluut	Tuesday
ar-rabuu9	Wednesday
al-xamiis	Thursday
al-jum9a	Friday

السبت  
الاحد  
الاثنين  
الثلاثاء  
الاربعاء  
الخميس  
الجمعة

Saturday and Sunday are workdays; Thursday and Friday are the "weekend", since Friday is the Moslem holy day.

4. To express 'ago', /gab1/ is used before a time word:

gab1 yoomeen                      two days ago

/min/ is used to express 'since':

min yoom at-taluut                      since Tuesday

5. /saakin/, 'living', is an "active participle", a word which acts like an adjective but is translated as a verb in English. There are several words like this in Arabic (we have met /faahim, faahma, faahmiin/); they will be discussed fully in Lesson 22.

saakin	he lives, you (m) live , I (m) live
saakna	she lives, you (f) live, I (f) live
saakniin	they live, you (p) live,
	we live

This is used to mean living, in the sense of 'residing', only.

6. /zamaan/, 'a long time', is used with /min/, and only with reference to past time; it can also mean 'a long time ago'.

raaH min zamaan.	He went a long time ago.
9irif min zamaan.	He knew ('found out') a long time ago.

Used with an imperfect verb, this phrase can have a present perfect translation in English:

yi9rif min zamaan.	He has known for a long time.
--------------------	-------------------------------

7. Note that /ba9iid/ and /gariib/ both are used with the preposition /min/ when followed by a location word. When /ba9iid/ is followed by a noun or pronoun, it is used with /9an/. (cf. Structure Sentences 5 and 6.)

gariib min hina	near here
ba9iid min hina	far from here
ba9iid 9an beetana	far from our house

8. /lak/ and /liyya/ are examples of the preposition /li/ being used with a pronoun. This is further discussed in Lesson 24.

9. Note that while /riyaal/ and /dulaar/ have plural forms, they remain singular when counted with a numeral:

dulaaraat katiir	many dollars
riyaalaat katiir	many riyals
xamsa dulaar	five dollars
xamsa riyaal	five riyals

10. Other numbers are:

şifir	zero	صفر
talata9ş	thirteen	ثلاث عشر
arba9ta9ş	fourteen	أربع عشر
xamasta9ş	fifteen	خمس عشر
siṭṭa9ş	sixteen	ست عشر
saba9ta9ş	seventeen	سبع عشر
tamanṭa9ş	eighteen	ثمان عشر
tisa9ta9ş	nineteen	تسع عشر
9işriin	twenty	عشرين
talaatiin	thirty	ثلاثين
arba9iin	forty	أربعين
xamsiin	fifty	خمسين
sittiin	sixty	ستين
sab9iin	seventy	سبعين
tamaniin	eighty	ثمانين
tis9iin	ninety	تسعين
xamsa wu 9işriin	twenty-five	خمس وعشرين
talaata w arba9iin	forty-three	ثلاثة وأربعين
sab9a wu tis9iin	ninety-seven	سبعة وتسعين
(etc.)		
miyya	one hundred	مئة
miyyateen*	two hundred	مئتين
miyyaat	hundreds	مئات

miyya wu xamasta9ṣ	115	مئة وخمستعشر
miyyateen wu xamsa wu 9iṣriin	225	ميتين وخمسة وعشرين
miyyateen w arba9a wu sittiin (etc.)	264	ميتين وأربعة وستين

\*A common alternate form is /miiteen/.

Higher numbers in the hundreds have special forms:

talatmiyya	300	ثلثية
arba9miyya	400	أربعمية
xamsmiyya*	500	خامسية
sittmiyya*	600	ستمية
sab9miyya*	700	سبعية
tamanmiyya*	800	ثمانية
tis9miyya*	900	تسعمية
alf	1000	الف
alfeen	2000	الفين
aalaaf	thousands	آلاف
alf wu miyyateen	1200	الف وميتين
alf wu miyya wu xamsa wu 9iṣriin (etc.)	1125	الف ومئة وخمسة وعشرين

\*Common alternate forms are /xumsumiyya, suttumiyya, subu9miyya, tumunmiyya, tusu9miyya/. These are borrowed from the Egyptian dialect.

malyoon	million	مليون
malyooneen	two million	مليونين
balyoon	billion	بليون
balyooneen	two billion	بليونين
malyoon wu xamsmiyya wu xamsa wu 9iṣriin	1,525,841	مليون وخمسمية وخمسة وعشرين ألفاً وثمانية وواحد وأربعين
alf wu tamanmiyya wu waaHid w arba9iin		
malaayiin	millions	ملايين
balaayiin	billions	بلايين

These numbers take a special ending /-een/ for 'two' (this will be explained in the next lesson).

/miyya/ becomes /miyyat/ in a construct phrase:

talatmiyyat dulaar	300 dollars
miyyat alf dulaar	100,000 dollars
xamsmiyyat alf dulaar	500,000 dollars

Vocabulary Notes

beet, buyuut	house	بيت بيوت
ṣaari9, ṣawaari9	street	شارع شوارع
9inwaan, 9anaawiin	address	عنوان عناوين
gariib, gariibiin	near	قريب قريبين
ba9iid (no plural)	far	بعيد

Drills

- Sixty plus nine equals sixty-nine. sittiin zaayid tis9a yisaawi tis9a wu sittiin. ستين زائد تسعة يساوي تسعة وستين.

Continue:

15 + 7	800 + 200	3000 + 779
25 + 3	450 + 450	76 + 660
41 + 6	501 + 30	840 + 30

2. When did you (m) come to the Kingdom? mita jiit al-mamlaka?

متا جيت المملكة؟

Substitute:

you (p)  
he  
they  
you (f)  
she

3. I have been here for three days.

liyya hina talaata ayyaam.

لي هنا ثلاثة ايام.

Substitute:

5 days  
7 days  
10 days  
6 hours  
3 hours  
a long time

4. Where do you (m) live?

inta feen saakin?

انت فين ساكن؟

Substitute:

you (f)  
they  
she  
he  
the people  
your friends  
Ahmad

5. He lives on 14th Street.

huwwa saakin fi šaari9 arba9ta9š.

هو ساكن في شارع اربعمش.

Substitute:

Gabil Street  
she  
near the embassy  
far from my house  
they  
in Saudi Arabia  
we  
in Taif

6. We arrived Monday.

wašalna yoom al-itneen.

وصلنا يوم الاثنين.

Substitute:

Thursday  
Tuesday  
Sunday

Friday  
Monday  
Saturday  
Wednesday

Situations

1. (on the telephone)
  - A. Where is your office?
  - B. On 22nd Street, near the French school.
  - A. And your address?
  - B. 515, 22nd Street.
  - A. May I come at 4:30?
  - B. Are you living near here?
  - A. No, I can take my car.
  - B. OK. Goodby.
  
2.
  - A. Has he been here long? ('much')
  - B. Yes, he came long ago.
  - A. Where from?
  - B. From Dhahran.
  - A. What does he do?
  - B. He works in an American company.
  - A. Is he important in the company?
  - B. Yes, very important.
  
3.
  - A. May I bring my friend?
  - B. Of course, welcome. What's his name?
  - A. Abdel-Rahman. He's very nice.
  - B. Does he speak English?
  - A. A little. He studied English in school for six months.



LESSON 14

Dialogue

will	Ha-	حـ
he comes	yiji	يجي
A. When will he come?	mita Ha-yiji?	متا حيجي؟
after	ba9d	بعد
week	usbuu9	اسبوع
B. In a week, I hope. ( 'after a week' )	ba9d usbuu9, in šaa' aḷḷaah.	بعد اسبوع ان شا' الله
A. Good. And your friend, Sharif?	ṭayyib. wu šaaHbak šariif?	طيب. وصاحبك شريف؟
I think	ažunn	اظن
weeks	asaabii9	اسبوع
B. After about three weeks, I think.	ažunn ba9d Hawaali talaata asaabii9.	اظن بعد حوالي ثلاثة اسابيع
period of time	mudda	مدة
A. That's a long time.	haadi mudda ṭawiila.	هادي مدة طويلة.
B. Yes, truly.	iiwa, šaHiiH.	ايوه صحيح.

Structure Sentences

1. We will go after an hour.	Ha-niruuH ba9d saa9a.	خروج بعد ساعة.
2. We will go today.	Ha-niruuH al-yoom.	خروج اليوم.
3. We will go today.	raH-niruuH al-yoom.	رُح نروح اليوم.
4. I studied for about two years.	darast sanateen tagriiban.	درست سنتين تقريبا.
5. They are our friends.	humma ašHaabana.	هم اصحابنا.
6. My friend Maryam is here for a period of three days.	šaaHbati maryam hina li-muddat talaata ayyaam.	صاحبتني مريم هنا لمدة ثلاثة ايام.
7. It's approximately 6:20.	as-saa9a sitta wu tult tagriiban.	الساعة ستة وثلث تقريبا.

Grammatical Notes

1. The future tense may be expressed with the imperfect verb, prefixed with /Ha-/ or /raH-/. Both prefixes are in widespread use (/Ha-/ is a borrowing from the Egyptian dialect). /Ha-/ is used throughout the Hijaz; /raH-/ is heard mostly in Jidda.

The future prefix is frequently omitted, however, and the future meaning is understood from other time words in the sentence:

mita yiwṣal? yiwṣal bukra.	When will he arrive? He'll arrive tomorrow.
mita Ha-yiwṣal? Ha-yiwṣal bukra.	When will he arrive? He'll arrive tomorrow.
mita raH-yiwṣal? raH-yiwṣal bukra.	When will he arrive? He'll arrive tomorrow.

The lack of distinction in usage between the imperfect and future tense is based on a grammatical concept of tense which is different from that in European languages. Perfect and imperfect tenses are technically different from past and present tenses in that they differentiate between "completed" and "incomplete" action, rather than a time frame. For this reason, the present and future tenses have blended together somewhat, with the prefixed future tense used most often for emphasis.

2. Arabic nouns have three types of "number": singular, plural, and dual. Dual nouns are marked with the suffix /-een/ (/ -teen/ for feminine nouns which end in /-a/). While we will learn a few words for which the pattern /itneen/ + plural is used, the large majority of nouns are dualized:

kitaabeen	two books
saa9ateen	two watches, two hours
madrasateen	two schools

If the noun ends in a vowel and is masculine, the ending is /-yeen/:

kursiyeen	two chairs
-----------	------------

When a dual noun takes an adjective, it remains plural:

kitaabeen judud	two new books
saa9ateen Hilwiin	two pretty watches

3. Other expression for telling time:

as-saa9a arba9a wu xamsa.	It's 4:05.
as-saa9a arba9a wu 9aṣara.	Its' 4:10.
as-saa9a arba9a wu tult.	It's 4:20. ('and one-third')
as-saa9a arba9a wu nuṣṣ illa xamsa.	It's 4:25. ('and one-half less five')
as-saa9a arba9a wu nuṣṣ wu xamsa.	It's 4:35. ('and one-half and five')
as-saa9a xamsa illa tult.	It's 4:40. It's 20 to 5. ( 'five less one-third')
as-saa9a xamsa illa 9aṣara.	It's 4:50. It's 10 to 5. ( 'five less ten')
as-saa9a xamsa illa xamsa.	It's 4:55. It's 5 to 5. ( 'five less five')

4. /li muddat/ is part of a construct phrase, used with time words, literally, 'for a period of', composed of /li/, 'for', and /mudda/, 'period'. It is optional, used for clarification.

5. Numbers 11 and above are followed by nouns in the singular:

iHda9š kitaab	eleven books
9išriin kitaab	twenty books
miyyat sana	one hundred years
arba9 wu 9išriin saa9a	twenty-four hours

6. /Hawaali/ may alternate with /tagriiban/, 'about, approximately'. /Hawaali/ is used before the time word; /tagriiban/ may be used before or after it in the sentence.

Vocabulary Notes

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Dual</u>	<u>Plural</u>	
second	saaniya	saanyateen*	sawaani	ثانية ثانيتين ثواني
minute	dagiiga	dagiigateen	dagaayig	دقيقة دقيقتين دقائق
hour	saa9a	saa9ateen	saa9aat	ساعة ساعتين ساعات
day	yoom	yoomeen	ayyaam	يوم يومين أيام
week	usbuu9	usbuu9een	asaabii9	أسبوع أسبوعين اسابيع
month	šahar	šahreem*	šuhuur	شهر شهرين شهور
year	sana	sanateen	siniin, sanawaat**	سنة سنتين سنين سنوات

\* Note that the second vowel is dropped before adding the dual suffix.  
 \*\* The second plural is more "classical".

biž-žabž	exactly	بالضبط
tagriiban	approximately	تقريبا
al-yoom	today	اليوم
bukra	tomorrow	بكرة
gab1	before	قبل
ba9deen	later	بعدين
ba9d šwayya	after a little while	بعد شوية
gariib	soon	قريب
rub9 saa9a	a quarter hour	ربع ساعة
nušš saa9a	a half hour	نص ساعة

Drills

1. He will go in an hour. Ha-yiruuH ba9d saa9a. حيرج بعد ساعة.

Substitute:

- in a week
- in two years
- [for a period of] a month and a half
- in five minutes
- today
- in a little while
- later
- soon, I hope
- before 3:00
- at 2:10 exactly

2. I will come after a long ana raH-aji ba9d mudda ṭawiila. انا رح أجي بعد مدة طويلة.

Substitute:

- we will come
- we will return
- soon, I hope
- tomorrow

they  
later  
before 5:30  
go  
I  
after a short while  
in two minutes exactly  
come  
in a quarter hour

3. Where is your friend (m)? feen şaaHbak?

فين صاحبك؟

Substitute:

your friend (f)  
your friends  
my friends  
his friend (m)  
our friend  
her friends  
her friend (f)  
my friend (f)  
my friend (m)  
your friend (m)  
your (p) friends

4. A. When will your friend come? mita yiji şaaHbak?

متا يجي صاحبك؟

B. My friend will come the day after tomorrow. şaaHbi yiji ba9d bukra.

صاحبي يجي بكره.

Continue asking the question, and giving the following answers:

after an hour  
in about ten minutes  
soon, I think  
in a year  
in two weeks  
in a short time  
today

5. Given the phrase or sentence in the singular, change it to dual:

walad  
walad şaghiir  
şaari9  
beet  
ba9d usbuu9  
al-maşaar hina.  
jiib kursi.  
darast li-muddat şahar.

ولد  
ولد صغير  
شارع  
بيت  
بعد اسبوع  
المطار هنا  
جيب كرسي  
درست لمدة شهر

6. Given the word or phrase in the singular, change it to plural:

dagiiga  
şaari9 şawiil  
ajnabi  
şarika amrikiyya  
dulaar

دقيقة  
شارع طويل  
اجنبي  
شركة امريكية  
دولار

7. Please, when will  
you (m) go?

min faḍlak, mita raH-tiruuH?

من فضلك متى  
تروح؟

Substitute:

When will you answer them?  
What time did they leave?  
Which one (m) did you (m) like?  
Who will we leave with?  
Was he carrying much?  
Did I leave my watch here?  
How did they answer the question?  
What did you (p) do?

Situations

1.
  - A. When will your friend (m) come?
  - B. I don't know. Soon, I hope.
  - A. In about a week?
  - B. In a week or two, I think.
  - A. Maybe I will come and greet him here.
  - B. Welcome, of course.
2.
  - A. When will they arrive at the airport?
  - B. I don't know; I have to ask.
  - A. What did he say?
  - B. At exactly 10:20. It's still early.
  - A. From which door will they come?
  - B. That one.
3.
  - A. Did you (p) sleep long?
  - B. No, we slept an hour and a quarter. Then ('later') we took the car and went to my friend Ahmad.
  - A. How is Ahmad? (literally, 'Ahmad, how is he?') I've missed him.
  - B. Fine, he sends his greetings.
  - A. Thanks.

LESSON 15

Dialogue

permit me	ismaHli	إسمحلي
post office	bariid	بريد
A. Permit me, how do I go to the post office?	ismaHli, keef aruuH al-bariid?	إسمحلي، كيف أروح البريد؟
turn	luff	لف
right	yamiin	يمين
end	aaxir	آخر
B. Turn right at the end of the street	luff yamiin fi aaxir aš-šaari9.	لف يمين في آخر الشارع.
A. And then?	wu ba9deen?	وبعدين؟
go	ruuH	روح
traffic light	išaara	إشارة
left	šimaal	شمال
facing	mugaabil	مقابل
bank	bank	بنك
B. Go to the light and turn left. The post office is facing the bank.	ruuH lil-išaara wu luff šimaal. al-bariid mugaabil al-bank.	روح للإشارة ولف شمال. البريد مقابل البنك.
A. Thanks. ('you are thanked')	maškuur.	مشكور.
thanks	šukr	شكر
duty	waajib	واجب
B. You're welcome. ('no thanks for a duty')	la šukr 9ala waajib.	لا شكر على واجب.

Structure Sentences

1. The school is beside the post office.	al-madrasa jamb al-bariid.	المدرسة جنب البريد.
2. The post office is straight ahead, behind the bank.	al-bariid dughri, wara l-bank.	البريد دغري، وراء البنك.
3. Cross the street.	9addi š-šaari9.	عدي الشارع.
4. The ministry is at the beginning of the street.	al-wizaara fi awal aš-šaari9.	الوزارة في أول الشارع.

5. Cross there.

9addi min hinaak.

عدي من هناك.

Grammatical Notes

1. /luff/ and /ruuH/ are examples of the imperative (command) in Arabic.

The imperative is formed from the second person form of the imperfect verb, omitting the person prefixes:

<u>Verb</u>	<u>Imperative</u>		
laff, yiluff (basic form: tiluff)	(m) luff (f) luffi (p) luffu	turn	لف لغي لغوا
9adda, yi9addi (basic form: ti9addi)	(m) 9addi* (f) 9addi* (p) 9addu	cross	عدي عدي عدوا
katab, yiktub (basic form: tiktub)	(m) iktub (f) iktubi (p) iktubu	write	اكتب اكتبي اكتبوا

\*If the masculine imperative ends in /-i/, it cannot be distinguished from the feminine imperative.

Other verbs presented

so far:

(in the masculine imperative form; feminine and plural are predictable)

iftaH	open
igfil	close
i9mil	do
idrus	study
itkallam	speak
9arrif	introduce
ista'zin	take permission
ista9mil	use
ruuH	go
suuf	see
naam	sleep
guul	say
jiib	bring
is'al	ask
xud	take
imsi	go
sawwi	do
siib	leave behind
siil	carry
rudd	answer
Huṭṭ	put
insa	forget

افتح  
اغلق  
اعمل  
ادرس  
اتكلم  
اعرف  
استاذن  
استعمل  
روح  
شوف  
نام  
قول  
جيب  
اسأل  
خذ  
امشي  
سوي  
سيب  
شيل  
رد  
خط  
انس

/ja/ has an irregular imperative:

(m) ta9aal	come
(f) ta9aali	
(p) ta9aalu	

تعال  
تعالين  
تعالوا

3. /iṣaara/, 'traffic light', may also refer to any type of signal.

4. When asking and giving directions, /min/ may be used in Arabic, and is usually not translated into English:

niruuH min feen?	Which way do we go?
ruuHu min hina.	Go here. Go this way.
ruuHu min hinaak.	Go there. Go that way.

Vocabulary Notes

Prepositions

mugaabil	facing	مقابل
guddaam	in front of	قدام
wara	behind	ورا
jamb	beside	جنب
foog	up; above	فوق
taHat	down; below	تحت
barra	outside	برا
juwwa	inside	جوا

Verbs

laff, yiluff (laffet)	turn	لف يلف (لفيت)
Sadda, yi9addi (9addeet)	cross	عدي يعدي (عديت)

Nouns

iSaara, -aat	traffic signal	اشارة - ات
kubri, kabaari	bridge	كبرى كبارى
9imaara, -aat	building	عمارة - ات
bank, bunuuk	bank	بنك بنوك
waajib, -aat	duty	واجب - ات

Drills

1. Turn right at the end of the street.      luff yamiin fi aaxir as-saari9.      لف يمين في آخر الشارع

Substitute:

at the beginning of the street  
 on that street  
 at Mecca Road  
 left  
 after that building  
 behind the bank  
 before the traffic signal  
 near the post office

2. Given the sentence in the perfect tense, change it to a command (to a man):

fataH al-baab.	فتح الباب
sallam 9alee.	سلم عليه
gafal al-baab.	قفل الباب
sawwa l-waajib.	سوى الواجب
axad as-sayyaara.	اخذ السيارة
raaH al-maṭaar.	راح المطار

Repeat, giving the command to a woman, to a group.



3. Then go straight. ba9deen ruuH dughri. بعدين روح دغري

Substitute:

cross the bridge  
 turn left  
 go inside  
 come here  
 open your book  
 introduce your friends  
 use my car  
 take ten dollars  
 cross from there  
 do your homework (literally, 'your duty')

Repeat, giving the command to a woman, to a group.

4. The post office is facing al-bariid mugaabil al-bank. البريد مقابل البنك.  
 the bank.

Substitute:

inside  
 in front of  
 beside  
 above  
 beside, on the right  
 the bridge  
 on the left  
 the building  
 under  
 outside  
 near

5. This car is from Germany. haadi s-sayyaara min almaanya. هادي السيارة من ألمانيا.

Substitute:

England  
 overseas (literally, 'outside')  
 Japan  
 my brother  
 my father  
 our friends

#### Situations

1.
  - A. Permit me, where is the bank building?
  - B. The bank building is on that street.
  - A. How do I go?
  - B. Cross the street, go to the signal, and go straight ahead.  
 The building is at the end of the street.
  - A. Can I leave my car there?
  - B. Yes, in front of the building.
2.
  - A. Where is the Foreign Ministry?
  - B. Not far from the embassy. Go to the light and turn right.
  - A. Will I see it on the right?
  - B. No, on the left.
  - A. Thanks.
  - B. Not at all. ('No thanks for a duty')

LESSON 16

Dialogue

say	guul	قول
costs	yikallif	يكلف
A. Tell me, how much does this cost?	guul, haada yikallif kam?	قول، هادا يكلف كم؟
cheap	raxiiş	رخيص
without	bala	بلا
money	fuluus	فلوس
B. This is cheap. No charge.	haada raxiiş. bala fuluus.*	هادا رخيص بلا فلوس.
A. So how much?	ya9ni gaddees?	يعني قديش؟
B. Twenty riyals.	9işriin riyaal bass.	عشرين ريال بس.
believable	ma9guul	ممقول
expensive	ghaali	غالي
I give	addi	ادي
A. Unbelievable! That's very expensive. I'll give you ten.	muu ma9guul! haada marra ghaali. ana addiik 9aşara.	مو ممقول! هادا مرة غالي. انا اديك عشرة.
B. No, no.	la', la'.	لا، لا.
speech	kalaam	كلام
A. How much then? Final price. ('final speech')	b-kam? aaxir kalaam.	بكم؟ آخر كلام.
sake	xaatir	خاطر
B. OK, just for you, 18.	ṭayyib, 9aşaan xaatirak, tamanṭa9ş.	طيب عشان خاطرک نمتعز، تامنطاش.
finished	xalaş	خلص
A. Twelve...OK, 15 and that's it.	itna9ş...ṭayyib, xamaṣṭa9ş wu xalaş.	اثنتعش...طيب، خمستعش وخلص.
congratulations ('blessed')	mabruuk	مبروك
B. OK. Congratulations.	ṭayyib. mabruuk.	طيب مبروك.
bless	yibaarik	يبارك
A. Thanks. ('May God bless you')	aḷḷaah yibaarik fiik.	الله يبارك فيك.

\*A common alternative way to say this is /b-balaas/.

Structure Sentences

1. This is ten piastres, half a riyal.	haada b-9ašara guruuš, nušš riyaal.	هادا بمشرة قروش، نص ريال.
2. Money is important.	al-fuluus muhimma.	الفلوس مهمة.
3. Go for his sake.	ruuH 9ašaan xaaṭru.	روح عشان خاطره.
4. Can you give me two riyals?	mumkin tiddiini riyaaleen?	ممکن تدبني ريالين؟
5. Congratulations on the new car.	mabruuk 9ala s-sayyaara l-jadiida.	مبروك على السيارة الجديدة.
6. The book cost me eight dollars.	al-kitaab kallafni tamanya dulaar.	الكتاب كلفني ثمانية دولار.
7. Its price is reasonable.	si9ru ma9guul.	سعره معقول.
8. The price is fixed.	as-si9r maHduud.	السعر محدود.
9. I spent a lot of money.	šaraft fuluus katiir.	صرفت فلوس كثير.
10. Anything else? ('Any other service?')	ayy xidma taanya?	اي خدمة تانية؟

Grammatical Notes

1. /guul/, 'tell me', is very informal. Also used is /aguul/, 'I'll tell [you]', 'hey!'.
2. /bala/, 'without', is used with inanimate objects, especially money:  
raaH bala fuluus.                      He went without money.  
For persons, /min gheer/ is used (some speakers use this word exclusively):  
raaH min gheer axuu.                      He went without his brother.
3. /fuluus/, 'money', is a feminine noun, and takes feminine adjectives (except for /katiir/, which is not declined for gender or number).
4. /kam/, 'how many', and /gaddees/, 'how much', are interchangeable when discussing prices, but not in other situations. /b-kam/ is the most common expression for inquiring about a price.
5. The basic unit of money in Saudi Arabia is the Saudi riyal, which contains twenty piastres, each of which contains five halala.

haada b-riyaal.	This is ('costs') one riyal.
haada b-riyaal waaHid.	This is one riyal.
haada b-riyaal wu nušš.	This is one and one-half riyals.
haada b-riyaal wu garšeen.	This is one riyal and two piastres.
haada b-rub9 riyaal.	This is a quarter riyal.
haada b-riyaaleen.	This is two riyals.
haada b-xamsa riyaal.	This is five riyals.
haada b-xamasta9š riyaal.	This is fifteen riyals.
haada b-9ašara guruuš.	This is ten piastres.
haada b-nušš garš.	This is one-half piastre.

6. /adda, yiddi/, 'to give', is usually used with direct object pronouns (this is an idiom); its use with indirect object pronouns (with /li-/) is technically more correct, but is usually heard in Meccan speech, and is not presented here.

(some examples)

addaani	he gave me
addaahum	he gave them
addatni	she gave me
addatak	she gave you (m)
addoohum	they gave them
addeetaha	I gave her
addeenaa	we gave him

7. /9aṣṣaan xaaṭrak/, 'for your sake', is conjugated for all persons. Note that before suffixes which begin with a vowel, the /i/ is dropped:

(Basic word: xaaṭir, 'sake')

9aṣṣaan xaaṭru	for his sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭirha	for her sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭirhum	for their sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭrak	for your (m) sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭrik	for your (f) sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭirkum	for your (p) sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭri	for my sake
9aṣṣaan xaaṭirna	for our sake

This is often abbreviated to /9aṣṣaan/ + the pronoun:

9aṣṣaanu	for him
9aṣṣaanaha	for her
9aṣṣaanahum	for them
9aṣṣaanak	for you (m)
9aṣṣaanik	for you (f)
9aṣṣaanakum	for you (p)
9aṣṣaani	for me
9aṣṣaanana	for us

8. /mabruuk/ is used with the preposition /9ala/ (/9a/) to mean 'congratulations on..., for...' (cf. Structure Sentence 5).

9. /taani/ (/taanya, taanyiin/) literally means 'second', but is frequently used to mean 'other' or 'else':

ayy xidma taanya? Any other service?

Vocabulary Notes

adda, yiddi (addeet)	give	أدى يدي (أديت)
kallaf, yikallif	cost	كلف يكلف
ṣaraf, yiṣruf	spend, exchange money	صرف يصرف
si9r, as9aar	price	سعر أسعار
riyaal, -aat	riyal	ريال -ات
garṣ, guruuṣ	piastre	قرش قروش
xidma, xadamaat	service	خدمة خدمات

bass

only

بسر

ghaali, -yiin  
raxiiş, ruxaaş

expensive  
cheap

غالي-تتن  
رخيىش رخاص

Drills

1. How much does this cost? haada yikallif kam?

هادا يكلف كم؟

Substitute:

these  
those  
this book  
that car  
these pens

2. His house cost him  
a lot.

beetu kallafu katiir.

بيته كلفه كثير

Substitute:

his car  
her house  
my watch  
the chairs  
the company's car  
the new airport

3. He went without money.

raaH bala fuluus.

راح بلا فلوس

Substitute:

his brother  
their son  
his books  
his brothers and sisters  
his watch

4. I'll give you ten.

addiik 9ašara.

اديك عشرة

Substitute:

money  
he will give you (m)  
she will give you (m)  
she will give me  
we will give them  
a good price  
they will give us  
they must give us  
a fixed price

5. I gave the man  
five riyals.

addeet lir-rijjaal  
xamsa riyaal.

اديت للرجال خمسة ريال

Substitute:

only three piastres  
he gave  
we gave  
eleven riyals  
she gave us

her  
the homework  
her watch  
me

6. Congratulations on the new car.      mabruuk 9ala s-sayyaara  
   l-jadiida.      مبروك على السيارة الجديدة.

Substitute:

the new watch  
the new [baby] boy  
your book  
the new house  
the new car

Situations

1.
  - A. How much is this (f)?
  - B. Only ten riyals.
  - A. No, give me a reasonable price.
  - B. For you, nine.
  - A. That's very expensive.
  - B. That's the final price.
2.
  - A. His car is very big.
  - B. Yes, and expensive, too. He spent a lot of money.
  - A. Is it new?
  - B. Yes, he bought it from France. Oh, sorry (/9afwan/), from Germany.
3.
  - A. I got this pen for a half riyal.
  - B. Unbelievable! That's a good price. How did you do it?
  - A. I spoke in Arabic and he gave me the pen for that price.
  - B. You should get two or three.
  - A. Yes, maybe.

Cultural Notes

1. Much purchasing in the Arab world, especially in the "souk" (market), is made through a bargaining process. Generally, you offer back about one-half to two-thirds of the quoted price, and gradually the buyer and seller meet somewhere in the middle. Many establishments have now instituted "fixed prices", for example, grocery stores and pharmacies.
2. /mabruuk/, 'congratulations', is used much more frequently in Arabic than in English. It is used not only for "significant" occasions (a wedding, birth of a child, graduation, etc.), but also, for example, when someone has made a purchase or finished a task.

LESSON 17

Dialogue

- |    |  |   |  |
|----|--|---|--|
|    | pleased  | 9ajab   | عجب  |
| A. | I like this. How much?   | haada 9ajabni. b-kam?                               | هادا عجبني. بكم؟                           |
|    | sure   | mit'akkid   | مؤكد                                       |
| B. | I'm not sure. Wait a moment. Ten riyals.                         | ana mana mit'akkid. istanna šwayya. 9ašara riyaal.  | انا منا متأكد. استنى شوية. عشرة ريال.      |
|    | better   | aHsan   | احسن                                       |
|    | or else  | wala  | ولا  |
|    | I buy  | aštari  | اشترى                                      |
| A. | That's too much. Tell me a better price or I won't buy anything. | haada katiir. gulli si9r aHsan wala ma aštari šayy. | هادا كثير. قوللي سعر احسن ولا ما اشترى شي. |
|    | speech   | kalaam  | كلام                                       |
| B. | Ten riyals, that's all.  | 9ašara riyaal, aaxir kalaam.                        | عشرة ريال، آخر كلام.                       |
|    | never mind   | ma9aleeš  | معلش                                       |
|    | maybe  | yimkin  | يمكن                                       |
| A. | OK, never mind. Maybe later.                                     | šayyib ma9aleeš. yimkin ba9deen, in šaa' aljaah.    | طيب معلش. يمكن بعددين ان شاء الله.         |
|    | you (m) want   | tibgha  | تبغى                                       |
| B. | Do you want to see anything else?                                | tibgha tišuuf šayy taani?                           | تبغى تشوف شي ثاني؟                         |
| A. | Not now, thanks.   | muu daHHiin, šukran.                                | مو دحين، شكرا.                             |

Structure Sentences

- |    |                                 |                                  |                           |
|----|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. | I want to buy an American car.  | abgha aštari sayyaara amrikiyya. | ابغى اشترى سيارة امريكية. |
| 2. | I'm sure that Ahmad went.       | ana mit'akkid innu aHmad raaH.   | انا متأكد انه احمد راح.   |
| 3. | He bought another watch.        | aštara saa9a taanya.             | اشترى ساعة ثانية.         |
| 4. | Come another time.              | ta9aal marra taanya.             | تعال مرة ثانية.           |
| 5. | I don't like these things.      | haadi l-ašyaa' ma ti9jibni.      | هادي الاشيا ما تعجبني.    |
| 6. | Never mind, it's not important. | ma9aleeš, muu muhimm.            | معلش مو مهم.              |

- |   |                                 |                        |
|---|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 7. He won't want to spend a lot of money. | ma yibgha yiṣruf fuluus katiir. | ما يبغى بصرف فلوس كثير |
| 8. Take this or this.                     | xud haada aw haada.             | خذ هادا او هادا        |
| 9. Do you want this or this?              | tibgha haada walla haada?       | تبغى هادا ولا هادا؟    |
| 10. Maybe he'll arrive early.             | yimkin yiwaṣal badri.           | يمكن يوصل بدرى         |

Grammatical Notes

1. /9ajab, yi9jib/, 'to please', is used with a direct object. It is generally translated into English as 'to like', in which case its structure is the reverse of the English expression. The verb is most commonly used in the perfect tense, and may mean past or present; this may be considered idiomatic.

9ajabni.	I liked it (m). ( 'it pleased me' )
9ajabatni.	I liked it (f). I like it (f).
9ajabooni.	I liked them. I like them.
yi9jibni.	I like him.
ti9jibni.	I like her.
yi9jibooni.	I like them.
yi9jiboona.	We like them.
haada 9ajabak?	Do you (m) like this (m)?
haadi 9ajabatak?	Do you (m) like this (f)?
humma 9ajaboo.	He likes them.

2. /innu/ 'that', is used as a "relative pronoun" to introduce a clause. It may also be used with a pronoun suffix:

innu*	that he...
innaha	that she...
innahum	that they...
innak	that you (m)...
innik	that you (f)...
innakum	that you (p)...
inni	that I...
innana	that we...

\*Note that the word /innu/ may simply mean 'that' (rather than 'that he'), without referring to anything else in the sentence.

ana mit'akkid innu haada ghaali.	I am sure that this is expensive.
ana faahim innu haada ghalat.	I understand that this is wrong.
ana faahim innaha jaat.	I understand that she came.
iHna mit'akkidiin innahum judud.	We are sure that they are new.

'wala/, /aw/, and /walla/ may all be translated 'or' in English.

wala/ is used to mean 'or else' or 'nor' in negative statements:

.wala ma astari šayy. kaan fil-beet wala fil-maktab.	...or [else] I won't buy anything. He was not at home nor ('or') at the office.
--	---



/aw/ is used for affirmative statements:

xud haada aw haada.	Take this or this.
addiini itneen aw talaata.	Give me two or three.

/walla/ is used for questions:

tibgha haada walla haada?	Do you want this or this?
huwwa raaH walla la'?	Did he go or not ('or no')?

It can be used with /amma/ to mean 'either...or':

amma bukra walla ba9deen.	Either tomorrow or later.
amma huwwa walla hiyya.	Either he or she.

/aw/ and /walla/ are used interchangeably by some speakers.

4. /ma/ is used as the negation word for verbs in the perfect, imperfect, and future tenses:

aHmad ma raaH.	Ahmad did not go.
ma aštari b-haada s-si9r.	I won't buy for this price.
ma sawwat šayy.	She didn't do anything.
ma gafalu l-beet.	They didn't close the house.
ma H-as'al as-su'aal haada.	I won't ask this question.
ma raH-nista9mil haadi l-fuluus.	We won't use this money.
ma Ha-yiju bukra.	They won't come tomorrow.

It is also used with /fii/, 'there is', 'there are':

fii naas katiir.	There are many people.
ma fii naas katiir.	There are not many people.
fii šayy hinaak.	There is something there.
ma fii šayy hinaak.	There isn't anything there.

5. /yibgha/, 'to want', may be used alone or as a helping verb with other verbs in a verb phrase. It is almost always used in the imperfect tense or with /kaan/:

abgha atkallam ingiliizi.	I want to speak English.
ma nibgha niftaH al-baab.	We don't want to open the door.
ma kunt abgha ašuuƒaha.	I didn't want to see her.
kaanu yibghu yi9arrifoo 9alayya.	They wanted to introduce him to me.

/yibgha/ is a "pure" Saudi word, and is not heard in other Arabic dialects. When speaking with foreigners or non-Saudi Arabs, Saudis may use forms taken from other dialects, such as /bididi/ (/biddak/, /biddaha/, etc.), taken from Palestinian, or /9aawiz/ (/9aawza/, /9aawziin/), taken from Egyptian.

6. /yimkin/, 'maybe', may be used alone or as a modal word with an imperfect verb (like /laazim/ and /mumkin/). It does not change form:

yimkin yiṣal badri. Maybe he will arrive early.  
yimkin tiṣal badri. Maybe she will arrive early.

Vocabulary Notes

šayy, ašyaa'	thing	شي اشيا'
baa9, yibii9 (bi9t)	sell	باع يبيع (بعث)
aštara, yištari (aštareet)	buy	اشترى يشتري (اشترت)

Drills

1. I like this. ('This pleased me.') haada 9ajabni. هادا عجبني.

Substitute:

those  
pleased them  
pleased her  
this room  
pleased me  
that house  
pleased us  
that house  
pleased us  
that thing  
this thing

2. I don't know anything. ma a9rif šayy. ما اعرف شي.

Substitute:

huwwa	هو
humma	هم
iHna	أنا
hiyya	هي
uxti	أختي
axwaati	أخواتي
šaahbi	صاحبي
intu	انتو

3. Do you (m) want to see anything else? tibgha tišuuf šayy taani? تبغش تشوف شي ثاني؟

Substitute:

she  
you (p)  
the house  
he  
they  
this or that  
you (f)

4. I want to buy a car. abgha aštari sayyaara. ابغى اشترى سيارة.

Substitute:

we  
they  
she  
you (m)  
the people  
he  
you (f)  
my father  
you (p)  
my friends  
my wife

5. He bought another watch. aštara saa9a taanya. اشترى ساعة ثانية.

Substitute:

another house  
she  
I  
new car  
old book  
we  
another table  
he  
they

6. I'm sure that Ahmad went. ana mit'akkid innu aHmad raah. انا متأكد انه احمد راح.

Substitute:

we  
she  
that they went  
that it is correct  
he  
that it (f) cost a lot  
that you (m) must buy one  
they  
that he is good  
that she is Russian

7. Tomorrow we'll buy another book. bukra ništari kitaab taani. بكرة نشترى كتاب تانى.

Substitute:

many things  
they buy  
you (m) buy  
some pens  
you (p)  
she  
he

8. Given the sentence in the affirmative, change it to negative:

darasat 9arabi.  
 Ha-tiwʕal ba9d bukra.  
 saab uxtu fil-beet.  
 ana gult haada.  
 ana adri feen humma.  
 waHaʕni.  
 Haʕteetahum 9aʕ-ʕarabiiza.  
 Ha-niruuH ba9deen.  
 sibna l-aʕyaa' wara l-baab.

درست عربي.  
 حتوصل بعد بكرة.  
 ساب اخته في البيت.  
 انا قلت هاادا.  
 انا ادري فين هم.  
 وحشني.  
 حطيتهم بالطرييزة.  
 حنروح بعدين.  
 سبنا الاشياء ورا الباب.

Situations

1.
  - A. How do I go to the city?
  - B. Cross the bridge and then straight ahead. Can you take my friend (m)?
  - A. Of course. We will go in my car.
  - B. Thanks. He wants to buy something there.
2.
  - A. When will you (p) go?
  - B. If God wills, at the end of the month. I'm not sure.
  - A. You should go now.
  - B. We want to go now, but we spent [so] much money.
  - A. Well, never mind.
3.
  - A. I want to buy those chairs. I like them.
  - B. Yes, we saw them yesterday and liked them, too.
  - A. How much do they cost?
  - B. I asked and the man told me a reasonable price, about thirty riyals.
  - A. Good, I'll take three or four.
  - B. Me too.
4.
  - A. When will your friend (f) leave?
  - B. I asked her but she didn't answer me.
  - A. I think she wants to leave on Thursday.
  - B. She's not sure.

LESSON 18

Dialogue

age	9umr	عمر
A. How old are you?	kam 9umrak?	كم عمرك؟
holiday	9iid	عيد
birth	miilaad	ميلاد
coming	jayy	جَي
January	yanaayir	يناير
B. I'm 25. My birthday will be next month, in January.	9umri xamsa wu 9isriin sana. 9iid miilaadi Ha-yikuun as-šahar al-jayy fi yanaayir.	عمري خمسة وعشرين سنة. عيد ميلادي سيكون الشهر الجي في يناير.
older, bigger	akbar	أكبر
born	mawluud	مولود
A. I'm older than you. I was born in 1948. ('I am born in 1948.')	ana akbar minnak. ana mawluud fi 9aam alf wu tis9miyya wu tamanya w arba9iin.	انا أكبر منك. انا مولود في عام الف وتسعمية وثمانية واربعين.
B. Really?	šaHiIH?	صحيح؟
A. Yes, I'm two years older than you. I'm the oldest of my brothers and sisters.	iiwa, ana akbar minnak b-sanateen. ana akbar axwaani.	ايوه، انا أكبر منك. انا بسنتين. انا أكبر اخواني.

Structure Sentences

1. He is three and one-half.	9umru talaata siniin wu nuşş.	عمره ثلاثة سنين وربع.
2. She is eleven.	9umraha ihqaa9š sana.	عمرها احد عشر سنة.
3. My birthday is the day after tomorrow.	9iid miilaadi ba9d bukra.	عيد ميلادي بعد بكرة.
4. Let's go next week.	yaŕla niruuH al-usbuu9 al-jayy.	يلله نروح الاسبوع الجي.
5. Let's go (leave).	yaŕla nimš'i.	يلله نمشي.
6. This is more beautiful.	haada ajmal.	هادا اجمل.
7. She is older than her sister.	hiyya akbar min uxtaha.	هي أكبر من اختها.
8. This is the most beautiful.	haada l-ajmal.	هادا الاجمل.
9. This is the cheapest book.	haada l-kitaab al-arxaş.	هادا الكتاب الارخم.
10. This is the cheapest book.	haada arxaş kitaab.	هادا ارخم كتاب.

Grammatical Notes

1. /kam/, 'how many', is followed by a singular noun:

kam sana	how many years?
kam kitaab	how many books?
kam waaHid	how many [ones]?

2. /jayy/, 'next' (literally, 'coming'), is used with time words, and agrees in gender with the noun it modifies:

al-usbuu9 al-jayy	next week
aš-šahar al-jayy	next month
yoom al-itneen al-jayy	next Monday
as-sana l-jayya	next year
as-siniin al-jayya	the coming years

3. The "foreign" months (/aš-šuhuur al-ifranjiyya/) are:

yanaayir	January	يناير
fibraayir	February	فبراير
maaris	March	مارس
abriil	April	أبريل
maayu	May	مايو
yuunya	June	يونيا
yuulya	July	يوليا
ughuštus	August	أغسطس
sibtambar	September	سبتمبر
uktuubar	October	أكتوبر
nufambar	November	نوفمبر
disambar	December	دسمبر

Arabia officially follows the Islamic calendar, with its own months (Lesson 47), but Saudis frequently use the western months when dealing with foreigners.

4. When citing a year, the number is usually preceded by /9aam/, 'the year of' (this is the classical word for 'year'). If the year is after 1900, the numbers 'one thousand and nine hundred' may be omitted:

9aam alf wu tis9miyya	1967
wu sab9a wu sittiin	
9aam sab9a wu sittiin	1967

5. The pattern for forming comparative adjectives is:

$aC_1C_2aC_3$

Some adjectives are slightly irregular because of the root consonants:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	
kabiir	akbar	big, bigger; old, older
šaghiir	ašghar	small, smaller
katiir	aktar	much, more
Hilu	aHla	pretty, prettier
ghaali	aghla	expensive, more expensive
muhimm	ahamm	important, more important

The comparative adjective is used alone or with /min/ (cf. Structure Sentences 6 and 7.)

To make the adjective superlative, the same form is used with the definite article /al-/, or in construct with a noun (cf. Structure Sentences 8, 9, and 10.)

These adjective forms do not change for gender and number.

6. Some adjectives cannot be made comparative with this pattern:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Comparative</u>	
mabsuuṭ	mabsuuṭ aktar	happy, happier

7. /mawluud/, 'born', is declined for gender and number:

- (m) mawluud
- (f) mawluuda
- (p) mawluudiin

8. /min/, when used with pronoun suffixes, has the base form /minn-/:

minnu	from him
minnaha	from her
minnahum	from them
minnak	from you (m)
minnik	from you (f)
minnakum	from you (p)
minni	from me
minnana	from us

9. /yaḷḷa/ is used as 'let's go', 'hurry up'. It may be used alone, with an imperfect verb in the 'we' form (cf. Structure Sentences 4 and 5), or with an imperative verb.

Vocabulary Notes

jamiil, (no plural)	beautiful	جميل
galiil, -a, -iin	few	قليل - بن

Summary of adjectives:

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Comparative Form</u> (regular)	
kabiir	akbar	أكبر
ṣaḡhiir	aṣḡhar	أصغر
katiir	aktar	أكثر
gadiim	aḡdam	أقدم
ṭawiil	aṭwal	أطول
ḡaṣiir	aḡṣar	أقصر
tagiil	atgal	أثقل
laṭiif	alṭaf	الطف
baḡiid	abḡad	أبعد
gariib	agraḡ	أقرب
wiḤiṣ	awḤaṣ	أوحش
raxiiṣ	arxaṣ	أرخص
jamiil	ajmal	أجمل
ṭayyib	aṭyab	أطيب
	(irregular)	
jadiid	ajadd	أجدد
xafiif	axaff	أخفف
galiil	aḡall	أثقل
muhimm	aḡamm	أهم

ghaali  
Hilu  
mabsuuṭ  
ta9baan  
ma9guul

aghla  
aHla  
mabsuuṭ aktar  
ta9baan aktar  
ma9guul aktar

اغلي  
احلى  
مبسوط اكثر  
تعيان اكثر  
مقبول اكثر

The word most often used as comparative for 'good' is irregular. (It comes from a classical word, /Hasan/, 'good', which is not used in this dialect.)

aHsan

better

احسن

Drills

1. How old are you (m)?

kam 9umrak?

كم عمرك؟

Substitute:

she  
they  
I  
you (f)  
he  
you (p)

2. I am 25 years old.

9umri xamsa wu 9iṣriin sana. عمري خمسة وعشرين سنة.

Substitute:

he  
you (p)  
you (f)  
she  
they

3. My birthday will be next month.

9iid miilaadi Ha-yikuun aṣ-ṣahar al-jayy.

عيد ميلادي سيكون الشهر الجي.

Substitute:

our birthday  
his birthday  
next week  
next Tuesday  
your (f) birthday  
their birthday  
next Friday  
my birthday  
next month

4. I was born in 1948.

ana mawluud fi 9aam alf wu tis9miyya wu tamanya w arba9iin.

انا مولود في عام الف وتسعمية وثمانية واربعين.

Substitute:

she  
1951  
my brother  
they  
we  
1935  
he  
1893



5. I am older than you (m). ana akbar minnak.

انا اكبر منك.

Substitute:

than he  
younger (smaller)  
more handsome  
than they  
than she  
shorter  
newer  
than you (p)  
better  
than you (m)

6. He is older by two years. huwwa akbar b-sanateen.

هو اكبر بستين.

Substitute:

3 years  
2 weeks  
17 years  
8 months  
5 1/2 hours  
many years

7. Let's go.

ya $\ddot{a}$ lla niruuH.

بلله نروح.

Substitute:

Let's do that.  
Let's close the house.  
(to a man) Close the door.  
(to a woman) Bring the chair.  
Let's go outside.  
(to a group) Buy it (m).

8. This is the cheapest book.

haada arxaş kitaab.

هاذا ارخص كتاب.

Substitute:

the prettiest girl  
the best room  
the lightest book  
the longest sentence  
the biggest door  
the most expensive car  
the nicest boy  
the most important question

9. Given the adjective, change it to comparative:

al-walad gaşiiir.  
ana mabsuu $\ddot{t}$ .  
haada kwayyis.  
al-imtiHaan  $\dot{t}$ awiil.  
al-waraga xafiifa.  
al-maaşa Hilwa.  
as-si9r ghaali.  
al-fuluus galiila.

الولد قصير  
انا مبسوط  
هاذا كويس  
الامتحان طويل  
الورقة خفيفة  
العاصه حلوة  
السعر غالي  
الفلوس قليلة

Situations

1.
  - A. When is your son's birthday?
  - B. My son's birthday is next week.
  - A. How old is he?
  - B. Five. He'll be six in a week.
  - A. Six years? He's big!
  - B. Yes, older than my daughter by three years.
  
2.
  - A. What are you doing?
  - B. I have to go to the office.
  - A. Really?
  - B. Yes, I have to see someone ('one') there.
  - A. What time will he come?
  - B. Soon. I must excuse myself.
  - A. Go ahead.
  
3.
  - A. Do we have to take the car?
  - B. No. I think it's not necessary.
  - A. Can we go this way ('from here')?
  - B. Of course, that's a good street. It goes to the post office and near my bank ('the bank belonging to me').
  - A. That's the most important thing.

LESSON 19

Dialogue

you (m) have	9indak	عندك
A. How many brothers and sisters do you (m) have?	9indak kam axx w uxt?	عندك كم اخ واخت؟
B. I have three brothers and three sisters.	9indi talaata axwaan wu talaata axwaat.	عندي ثلاثة اخوان وثلاثة اخوات
married	mitzawwij	متزوج
A. Are they married?	humma mitzawwijiin?	هم متزوجين؟
engaged	maxtuub	مخطوب
university	jaam9a	جامعة
B. One sister is married and one is engaged. My brothers are in the university.	waHda min axwaati mitzawwija wu waHda maxtuuba. axwaani fil-jaam9a.	واحدة من اخواني متزوجة وواحدة مخطوبة. اخواني في الجامعة.
father	waalid	والد
mother	waalida	والدة
present	mawjuud	موجود
A. Are your father and mother living? ('present')	waalidak wu waalidatak mawjuudiin?	والدك ووالدتك موجودين؟
B. Yes.	iiwa.	ايوه

Structure Sentences

1. I was married a year ago.	atzawwajt gabl sana.	اتزوجت قبل سنة.
2. She has been married since last year. ('is married')	hiyya mitzawwija min al-9aam al-maađi.	هي متزوجة من العام الماضي.
3. He arrived the day before yesterday.	waşal awal ams.	وصل اول امس.
4. He is not alive.	huwwa muu 9aayis.	هو مو عايش.

Grammatical Notes

1. /9ind/is a preposition usually translated into English as the verb 'to have'. When used in this way, it takes pronoun endings:

9indaha fuluus.	She has money.
ma 9indahum šayy.	They don't have anything.

/9ind/ may also mean 'at the home of' (used like "chez" in French):

ruHt 9ind aHmad.	I went to Ahmad's house.
jaa 9indi mit'axxir.	He came to my house late.
ta9aal 9indana.	Come to our house.

2. /mitzawwij/, 'married', is an example of a "passive participle" in Arabic. This is a predictable pattern and functions like an adjective; it refers to a "state resulting from the action of a verb", and is derived from transitive verbs. Examples:

Verbs like /katab/:  
Pattern: maC<sub>1</sub>C<sub>2</sub>uuC<sub>3</sub>

katab	maktuub	written
xaṭab	maxṭuub	engaged
wajad	mawjuud	present ('found')

Other Verbs:  
Pattern: /mi/ or /mu/ + imperfect verb stem

(yitzawwij)	mitzawwij
(yit'akkid)	mit'akkid

The feminine form is predictable, and the plural form is almost always the suffix /-iin/.

Not all verbs can have a passive participle; some have another passive form (Lesson 37).

3. /waalid/ and /waalida/ are honorific terms for 'father' and 'mother'. They are frequently used when referring to parents, as a sign of respect.

4. To express 'last' or past time, the word /maaḍi/, 'past', is used. It is declined to agree in gender with the noun it modifies:

al-usbuu9	al-maaḍi	last week	
aṣ-ṣahar	al-maaḍi	last month	
as-sana	l-maaḍya	last year	
yoom	ar-rabuu9	al-maaḍi	last Wednesday

5. /min/, 'from', is also used to mean 'since' (cf. Structure Sentence 2).

6. The use of /mawjuud/ to mean 'living' or 'present' is idiomatic; more precise is the word /9aayiṣ/ (/9aayṣa/, /9aayṣiin/), 'alive'.

7. /awwal ams/, 'the day before yesterday', is an idiomatic expression.

### Vocabulary Notes

#### Regular Pattern

mawjuud	present, found	موجود
mawluud	born	مولود
maxṭuub	engaged	مخطوب
maktuub	written	مكتوب
mafhuum	understood	مفهوم
ma9muul	done	معمول
maṣkuur	thanked	مشكور
maftuuH	opened	مفتوح
magfuul	closed	مقفول
ma9ruuf	known	معروف
mabsuut	pleased	مبسوط
maHbuub	beloved	محبوب
ma9guul	reasonable	معقول
mabruuk	blessed	مبروك
maHduud	limited	محدود

Other Pattern

mit'axxir  
mit'akkid  
mitzawwij  
musta9mal

late ('delayed')  
certain  
married  
used

متأخر  
متأكد  
متزوج  
مستعمل

atzawwaj, yitzawwij  
at'akkad, yit'akkid

get married  
be certain

اتزوج يتزوج  
اتأكد يتأكد

jaam9a, -aat

university

جامعة -ات

Drills

1. Are they married?

humma mitzawwijin?

هم متزوجين؟

Substitute:

inti  
axuuk  
intu  
inta

انت  
اخوك  
انتو  
انت

2. Given the verb in the perfect tense, using the passive participle:

Example: gafal al-baab. → al-baab magfuul.  
Continue:

قفل الباب ← الباب مقفول

katab ad-dars.  
fihim al-jumla.  
9amal haada.  
9irif al-beet.

كتب الدرس  
فهم الجملة  
عمل هارا  
عرف البيت

3. My sister is engaged.

uxti maxtuuba.

اختي مخطوبة

Substitute:

married  
late  
my father  
present  
alive  
my mother  
happy  
certain

4. This is understood.

haada mafhuum.

هارا مفهوم

Substitute:

well-known ('known')  
written  
used  
reasonable  
closed  
done  
opened

5. I was married a year ago. atzawwajt gabl sana.

اتزوجت قبل سنة

Substitute:

they  
two weeks ago  
she  
my friend (m)  
three months ago  
we  
years ago  
he  
I  
a year ago

6. She has been married since last year.

hiyya mitzawwija min  
al-9aam al-maađi.

هي متزوجة من العام الماضي.

Substitute:

last month  
last Saturday  
they  
last week  
he  
last Thursday  
we  
my sister  
I  
last year  
she

7. Let's go to my house.

niruuH 9indi.

نروح عندي.

Substitute:

to his house  
to Ahmad's house  
to our house  
to my sister's house  
to their house  
to my father's house

### Situations

1.
  - A. Have you heard of this book?  
(literally, 'Do you know this book?')
  - B. Yes, it's well known ('known'). It was written long ago.
  - A. I want to buy it.
  - B. It's not necessary. You can take it from me.
  - A. When should I bring it?  
(literally, 'When do I bring it?')
  - B. Later, after a month or two.
2.
  - A. Is your brother married?
  - B. No, he'll be married next week.
  - A. Whom will he marry?
  - B. Abdel-Rahman's daughter. She's very young, 16 years old.
  - A. Really? Congratulations.
  - B. Thanks. (response)

3.  
A. Did you go to the university today?  
B. Yes, I gave them money.  
A. Is the university expensive?  
B. Not [too] expensive. Reasonable.  
A. I want to go to the university, too.  
B. When you are older, if God wills.

LESSON 20

Review last nine dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. I want to buy those. abgha astari hadool. ابغى اشترى هذول.

Substitute:

take money from him  
get married soon  
go to the airport  
turn left from there  
speak French  
cross the bridge  
get something ('thing') cheaper  
spend less money  
use their car  
see the best room  
greet her

(Repeat, using 'he', 'she', 'they', 'we'.)

2. Please go early. min faḍlak, ruuH badri. من فضلك روح بدري.

Substitute:

bring a small one (m)  
turn behind the building  
talk with those foreigners  
tell him "it doesn't matter"  
take them to the airport  
ask at ('in') the university  
give me five piastres  
come a little early

(Repeat, using feminine and plural forms)

3. Who lives in this house? miin saakin fi haada l-beet? مين ساكن في هادا البيت؟

Substitute:

is married, of your brothers?  
gave him the best price?  
went for her sake?  
wrote to the army?  
took the pen from him?  
said today is my birthday?  
lives at the end of the street?  
went months ago?  
was born (literally, 'is born') in 1955?

Questions

miin Haḍratak?  
inta mitzawwij?  
axwaanak mitzawwiijin?  
as-saa9a kam?  
keef Haalak?  
inta feen saakin?  
kam 9umrak?  
kam 9umr ṣaaḥbak?

مين حضرتك؟  
انت متزوج؟  
اخواتك متزوجين؟  
الساعة كم؟  
كيف حالك؟  
انت فين ساكن؟  
كم عمرك؟  
كم عمر صاحبك؟



waalidak wu waalidatak mawjuudiin?  
sayyaaratak ghaalya?  
saa9atak kallafat kam?

والدك ووالدتك موجودين؟  
سيارتك غالية؟  
ساعتك كلفت كم؟

Narratives

Say in Arabic:

1. I went to the bank and took a little money. Then I bought my books for school. I like my school. I think it is the biggest and best in the city. There is no school better than this [one].

(Repeat, using different person forms.)

2. I am not sure that I know where the Americans live here, but I am sure there are many. I arrived only last month, and I am still new here. My house is big and nice, and my wife and children like Jidda. We want to go to Taif and Riyadh soon, I hope. People say that the cities are far. Maybe later we will go to Dhahran and other cities in Arabia.

LESSON 21

Dialogue

(In a taxi)

free (unoccupied)	faaḍi	فاضي
A. Are you (m) free?	inta faaḍi?	انت فاضي؟
B. Yes, get in.	iiwa, atfaḍḍal.	ايوه اتفضل.
A. How much from here to the embassy?	b-kam min hina lis-safaara?	بكم من هنا للسفارة؟
B. Five riyals.	xamsa riyaal.	خمسة ريال.
enough	kifaaya	كفاية
A. Unbelievable! Three is enough.	muu ma9guul! talaata kifaaya.	مو معقول! ثلاثة كفاية.
let be (command)	xalli	خلي
B. OK, let it be three.	ṭayyib, xalliiha talaata.	طيب، خليها ثلاثة.
in a hurry	mista9jil	مستعجل
drive (command)	suug	سوق
carefully ('at your leisure')	9ala mahlak	على مهلك
A. I'm in a hurry, but drive carefully.	ana mista9jil ṣwayya laakin suug 9ala mahlak.	انا مستعجل شويه لكن سوق على مهلك.
B. OK.	in ṣaa' aḷḷaah.	ان شاء الله.

Structure Sentences

1. I don't have enough money.	ma 9indi fuluus kifaaya.	ما عندي فلوس كفاية.
2. Drive slowly.	suug b-ṣweeḵ.	سوق بشويش.
3. The taxi driver drove fast.	sawwaag at-taksi saag b-sur9a.	سواق التاكسي ساق بسرعة.
4. Do you (m) know how to drive well?	ti9rif tisuug kwayyis?	تعرف تسوق كويس؟
5. He works as a driver.	huwwa yiṣtaghil sawwaag.	هو يشتغل سواق.
6. He has two drivers.	9indu itneen sawwaagiin.	عنده اثنين سواقين.
7. We are in a hurry.	iHna mista9jiliin.	احنا مستعجلين.
8. You must hurry.	laazim tista9jil.	لازم تستعجل.

Grammatical Notes

1. /kifaaya/, 'enough', is used after a noun, and does not change form:

talaata kifaaya.                      Three are enough.  
fuluus kifaaya                        enough money

2. Adverbs may be formed with particle words prefixed to a noun:

9ala mahlak                      carefully ('at your (m) leisure')  
9ala mahlik                       ('at your (f) leisure')  
9ala mahlakum                   ('at your (p) leisure')  
9ala mahli                        ('at my leisure')  
9ala mahlana                     ('at our leisure')

b-sweeš                            slowly ('with slowness')  
b-sur9a                            quickly ('with speed')

Other adverbs are simply the masculine adjective:

titkallam 9arabi    You speak Arabic well.  
kwayyis.

šuftu katiir.                      I saw him a lot ('much').

3. /aštaghal, yištaghil/, 'to work', may be used with a noun to mean 'to work as':

huwwa yištaghil sawwaag. He works [as] a driver.

4. Some nouns, especially nouns indicating profession or nationality, are not made dual with the /-een/ suffix. They are used with /itneen/ + the plural form:

itneen sawwaagiin	two drivers
itneen ajaanib	two foreigners
itneen su9uudiyiin	two Saudis
itneen amrikaan	two Americans

Vocabulary Notes

saag, yisuug (sugt)	drive	سائق يسوق (سقت)
ištaghal, yištaghil	work	اشتغل يشتغل
asta9jal, yista9jil	hurry	استمجل يستمجل
sawwaag, -iin	driver	سواق سواقين
mista9jil, -a, -iin	in a hurry	مستمجل -ين
faađi, -ya, -iin	free, unoccupied	فاضي -ين

Drills

1. How much from here to the embassy?                      b-kam min hina lis-safaara?                      بكم من هنا للسفارة؟

Substitute:

the bank  
the American school  
Mecca Road  
the Foreign Ministry  
the airport  
the American consulate  
the post office  
the embassy

2. I am in a hurry.                      ana mista9jil šwayya.                      أنا مستعجل شويه

Substitute:

we  
she  
you (m)  
they  
he  
you (f)  
I  
you (p)

3. You (m) must hurry.                      inta laazim tista9jil.                      انت لازم تستعجل

Substitute:

we  
you (f)  
she  
you (p)  
I  
all of us  
he

4. I don't have enough money.                      ma 9indi fuluus kifaaya.                      ما عندي فلوس كفاية

Substitute:

books  
friends  
chairs  
clocks  
children

5. Drive slowly.                      suug b-šweeš.                      سوق بشويش

Substitute:

quickly  
behind that car  
carefully  
my car

6. Do you know how to drive well?                      ti9rif tisuug kwayyis?                      تعرف نسوق كويس؟

Substitute:

she  
they  
you (f)  
he  
you (p)  
your brother  
the driver

Situations

1.
  - A. Taxi! Are you free?
  - B. Yes, get in.
  - A. How much from here to the bank?
  - B. Only six riyals.
  - A. OK, let's go. But drive carefully; we're not in a hurry.
  
2.
  - A. I want to go buy something. Can you take me in the car?
  - B. I'm sorry, I'm not free now.
  - A. But I don't drive, and there aren't any taxis.
  - B. Why do you want to go?
  - A. Today is my son's birthday. I have to buy him something.
  - B. Ask the driver.
  - A. Yes, I'm sure he'll go.

Cultural Notes

1. Since taxis do not have meters, it is customary to discuss the price of a trip before getting in.

## LESSON 22

Dialogue

waiting	mistanni	مستني
A. Have you been waiting here long? ('To you long waiting here?')	lak katiir mistanni hina?	لك كثير مستني هنا؟
B. I've been waiting here 20 minutes. ('It has been to me...')	liyya mistanni hina tult saa9a.	لي مستني هنا ثلث ساعة
sorry	mit'assif	متأسف
A. I'm sorry.	ana mit'assif.	انا متأسف
B. It's OK. It's nothing.	ma9aleeš. ma fii šayy.	معلش ما فيه شي
you (m) drink	tišrab	تشرب
cup	finjaan	فنجان
coffee	gahwa	قهوة
A. Would you like to drink a cup of coffee?	tiHubb tišrab finjaan gahwa?	تحب تشرب فنجان قهوة؟
cold	baarid	بارد
B. Something cold, please.	šayy baarid, min faḍlak.	شي بارد من فضلك

Structure Sentences

1. We are waiting for them.	iHna mistanniinhum.	احنا مستنينهم
2. I am waiting for him.	ana mintaziru.	انا منتظره
3. He already went.	giidu raaH.	قده راح
4. I am extremely sorry.	ana mit'assif bil-Heel.	انا متأسف بالحيل
5. Would you (f) like to come?	inti tiHubbi tiji?	انت تحبي تجي؟
6. We drank a glass of tea with milk.	širibna kubbaayat šaahi bil-Haliib.	شربنا كباية شاي بالحليب
7. I heard that these things are cheap.	simi9t innu l-Hajaat haadi raxiiša.	سمعت انه الحاجات هادي رخيصة
8. Why is he returning?	huwwa lees raaji9?	هو ليش راجع؟
9. We were sleeping.	kunna naaymiin.	كنا نايمين
10. I am not able.	ana mana gaadir.	انا ما قادر
11. I heard about you (m).	ana simi9t 9annak.	انا سمعت عنك

Grammatical Notes

1. /mistanni/ and /raaji9/ are examples of the "active participle" in Arabic. The active participle has a predictable pattern for each type of verb. It is usually translated like a verb in English, but it is in fact a noun in Arabic, declined for gender and number. If the word ends in a consonant, it takes the regular feminine ending /-a/, and the /-iin/ suffix for plural. If it ends in a vowel like /-i/, it takes /-yya/ for feminine and /-iin/ for plural. For example:

raaji9	returning (m)
raaj9a	returning (f)
raaj9iin	returning (p)

Note that the /i/ is dropped before adding the feminine and plural endings.

mistanni	waiting (m)
mistanniyya	waiting (f)
mistanniin	waiting (p)

The active participle is used to express the "actor", or the "doer" of an action. It is most often used with verbs of motion (to describe going, coming, returning, etc.) and verbs of "temporary state", mental or physical (understanding, knowing, sitting, standing). Sometimes the active participle is translated as the present perfect tense in English ('have seen', 'have done'), and whether this is meant will depend on the context of the sentence.

The most easily recognized pattern is that of regular verbs like /katab/:

$C_1aaC_2iC_3$

Examples:

faahim	'understanding'
ana faahim.	I understand. ('I am understanding')
humma mahum faahmiin	They do not understand the
al-jumla.	sentence. ('They are not understanding')
9aarif	'knowing'
ana mana 9aarif	I don't know how to go.
keef aruuH.	('I am not knowing')
iHna 9aarfiin innu	We know that he came.
jaa.	('We are knowing')
raayiH	'going'
mita huwwa raayiH?	When is he going?
jayy	'coming'
ana jayy daHHiin.	I am coming now.

Note the difference between the above sentences which describe (1) a temporary state or (2) a motion, and the sentences below which use a verb to describe (1) a permanent state or ability or (2) a habitual action:

afham ingiliizi	I understand English.
a9rif aktub kwayyis.	I know how to write well.
yiruuH al-madrassa badri.*	He goes to school early.
niji hina katiir.*	We come here often ('much').

\*Some speakers use the prefix /b-/ before verbs when expressing habitual or recurring action:

b-yiruuH  
b-niji

Sometimes speakers of Arabic use both the active participle and the imperfect verb for certain expressions which do not clearly fit into one category or the other. The sentences may differ slightly in connotation.

9aarifu kwayyis. I know him well. (I know  
all about him).  
a9rifu kwayyis. (Now) I know him well.

When used in the sense of present perfect, the phrase is often used with a form of the word /giid-/, 'already', (see note below) or other time words which give an indication that the sentence refers to recently-completed past time.

huwwa giidu šaarib He has already drunk tea.  
šaaḥi.  
huwwa waṣil min He [has] arrived long ago.  
zamaan.

Note that "hollow" verbs add /y/ in the active participle form:

raayih 'going'  
šaayif 'seeing'

Other types of verbs form the active participle by adding the prefix /m-/ or /mi-/ to the imperfect tense "base" (minus the person prefix):

<u>Base Form</u>	<u>Active Participle</u>
yisawwi	misawwi 'doing, having done'
yi9addi	mi9addi 'crossing, having crossed'
yintaṣir	mintaṣir 'waiting'

Some of these verbs also change the final vowel:

yistanna mistanni 'waiting'

The active participle of a transitive verb may be used with a direct object (cf. Structure Sentences 1 and 2).

2. /giid-/ is used with pronoun endings and means 'already':

giidu	he already	قيدُه
giidaha	she already	قيدُها
giidahum	they already	قيدُهم
giidak	you (m) already	قيدُكَ
giidik	you (f) already	قيدُكِ
giidakum	you (p) already	قيدُكُمْ
giidi	I already	قيدِي
giidana	we already	قيدُنَا

It is used before verbs:

giidu raaH. He already went.  
giidi šuftu. I already saw him.

3. More time expressions:

tult saa9a one-third of an hour  
rub9 saa9a one-quarter of an hour



nuṣṣ saa9a	one-half hour
nuṣṣ dagaiga	one-half minute
nuṣṣ saaniya	one-half second (etc.)

4. /Haaaja, Haajaat/ is another way of saying 'thing'. It alternates with /ṣayy/; the latter is usually preferred and is more classical.
5. /mintazir/, 'waiting', is used as often as /mistanni/. It is more classical.
6. /bil-Heel/, 'very much, extremely', is equivalent to /bil-marra/, and is more often used in the Najd.
7. Nouns which refer to containers or amounts are used in a construct phrase:

finjaan gahwa	a cup of coffee
kubbaayat ṣaahi	a glass of tea
talaata kiilu ṣaahi	three kilos of tea

8. /b-/ is used to mean 'with' when discussing ingredients of food or drink:

gahwa bil-Haliib	coffee with milk
ṣaahi b-sukkar	tea with sugar
ṣaahi bil-leemuun	tea with lemon

9. The verbs /Habb, yiHubb/, 'to like', and /gidir, yigdar/, 'to be able', are used as helping verbs with other verbs in a phrase:

tiHubb tiṣrab finjaan gahwa?	Would you (m) like to drink a cup of coffee?
tiHubbi tiji?	Would you (f) like to come?
gidir yiji badri. ma gidirt atkallam.	He was able to come early. I was not able to talk.

Vocabulary Notes

Active Participles

(Translations indicate the most likely usage for each word; not all active participles are used in all possible ways.)

(regular)

saakin	is residing	ساكن
waṣil	has arrived	واصل
daaris	has studied	دارس
kaatib	has written	كاتب
ḡaamil	is working	عامل
faatih	has opened	فاتح
gaafil	has closed	قافل
saa'il	is asking	سائل
ṣaarif	has spent	صائر
raaji9	is returning	راجي
gaadir	is able	قادر
ṣaarib	has drunk	شارب
saami9	is hearing, has heard	سامع

(hollow)

gaayil	has said	قائل
raayih	is going	راي
ṣaayif	is seeing	صايف
naayim	is sleeping	نايم
jaayib	is bringing	جايب
saayib	has left behind	سايب
ṣaayil	is carrying	صاييل

(other)		
maaṣi	is leaving	ماشي
middi	has given	مدي
mitkallam	has spoken	متكلم
misawwi	has done	مستوي
mi9addi	has crossed	معدّي
mintazir	is waiting	منتظر
mistanni	is waiting	مستني
muwaafiq	is in agreement	موافق

Verbs

ṣirib, yiṣrab	drink	شرب يشرب
riji9, yirja9	return	رجع يرجع
gidir, yigdar	be able	قدر يقدر
simi9, yisma9	hear	سمع يسمع
astanna, yistanna (astanneet)	wait	استنى يستنى (استنيت)
antazār, yintazir	wait	انتظر ينتظر
waafag, yiwaafiq	agree	وافق يوافق

Other Words

9aṣiir	juice	عصير
Haliib	milk	حليب
moyya	water	ماء
qahwa	coffee	قهوة
ṣaahi	tea	شاهي
leemuun	lemon	ليمون
sukkar	sugar	سكر
finjaan, fanaajiin	cup	فنجان فناجين
kubbaaya, -aat	drinking glass	كوبية -ات
mit'assif, -a, -iin	sorry	متأسف -ين
leeṣ	why?	ليه

Drills

1. Have you been waiting here long?      lak katiir mistanni hina?      لك كثير مستني هنا؟

Substitute:

you (p)  
she  
they  
he  
you (f)

2. I have been here 20' minutes.      liyya hina tult saa9a.      لي هنا ثلث ساعة.

Substitute:

1/4 hour  
1/2 hour  
we  
1/2 year  
he  
1/2 minute  
1/2 second  
she  
1/3 hour  
I

3. Would you like to  
drink a cup of  
coffee?

tiHubb tiṣrab finjaan  
gahwa?

نحب نشرب فنجان قهوة؟

Substitute:

you (f)  
something cold  
they  
he  
glass of tea  
we  
she  
glass of water  
you (m)  
juice  
we  
you (p)  
milk  
she

4. I am waiting for him.

ana mintaziru.

انا منتظره .

Substitute:

her  
them  
we  
him  
she  
me  
us

5. Given the cue sentence in the perfect tense, change it to the active participle form.

Example:

huwwa raah. → huwwa raayiH.

هو راج ← هو رايح .

Continue:

ana astanneet.  
ṣiribna ṣaahi.  
miin sa'al as-su'aal?  
huwwa ma gidir yiruuH.  
jaabat sayyaaratha.  
ana ṣilt Haaजाat katiir.  
miṣiina.  
al-walad 9adda ṣ-ṣaari9.  
huwwa waafag.  
9amal fi ṣarikat axuu.  
mita waṣalt?  
ma ṣaraf fuluus katiir.  
simi9tak.  
saab al-kutub 9aṭ-ṭarabiiza.

انا استنيت  
شربنا شاي.  
مين سأل السؤال؟  
هو ما يقدر يروح  
جابت سيارتها  
انا شلت حاجات كثير  
مشينا.  
الولد عدى الشارع  
هو وافق  
عمل في شركة اخوه  
متا وصلت؟  
ما صرف فلوس كثير  
سمعتك  
ساب الكتب عالطريزة

6. I am sorry.

ana mit'assif.

انا متأسف

Substitute:

we  
 she  
 he  
 they  
 returning  
 going  
 I  
 she  
 sleeping  
 he  
 was sleeping  
 we  
 they  
 see ('are seeing')  
 he  
 do you (f) see?  
 agree?  
 you (p)  
 understand?

7. We have been waiting for  
 them for a long time.iHna mistanniinhum  
 min zamaan.احنا مستنينهم  
 من زمان

Substitute:

waiting for him  
 have seen him  
 have seen them  
 I  
 have seen her  
 have written it (f)  
 we  
 she  
 has written it (m)  
 has drunk it (m)  
 he  
 has opened it  
 has opened them  
 we  
 have opened it (m)

8. Why is he returning?

huwwa leeš raaji9?

هو ليش راجع؟

Substitute:

going  
 they  
 not able  
 she  
 you (m)  
 sleeping  
 you (f)  
 he  
 coming  
 they  
 she  
 leaving that (m)  
 you (m)  
 you (p)

returning  
we  
you (m)  
he

Situations

1.
  - A. Would you like to drink coffee?
  - B. No, I have to go to my brother's house. He is waiting for me.
  - A. Are you returning soon?
  - B. After about half an hour, if God wills.
  
2.
  - A. Where do you live?
  - B. My house is at the end of this street, on the right.
  - A. My friends lived in that house, but I didn't see it.
  - B. Maybe you can see it from here.
  - A. No, I can't see anything.
  - B. Come over later.
  - A. OK, maybe I can.
  
3.
  - A. What are you carrying?
  - B. Only some old books. I just bought them yesterday. With your permission, may I leave them in that room?
  - A. I've given that room to Ahmad, but I'm sure it's OK.
  - B. When will he be back?
  - A. In half an hour or less. I'll tell him that the books are yours.
  - B. Thanks.

Cultural Notes

1. It is considered poor manners to neglect serving a guest something to drink, in a home or office, even during a short visit. You should always accept something, even if you only taste it.
2. Tea is preferred in glasses throughout the Arab world.

LESSON 23

Dialogue

- A. Where are you (m) going? feen raayih? فين رايج؟  
 appointment maw9ad موعد  
 minister waziir وزير
- B. I have an appointment with the Minister of Finance. 9indi maw9ad ma9a waziir al-maaliyya. عندي موعد مع وزير المالية.
- A. At the Finance Ministry? fi wizaarat al-maaliyya? في وزارة المالية؟  
 hotel fundug فندق  
 sea baHr بحر  
 red aHmar احمر  
 because li'ann لأن  
 official mas'uul مسؤول  
 all kull كل  
 staying naazil نازل
- B. No, at the Red Sea Hotel, because all the officials are staying there. la', fi fundug al-baHr al-aHmar, li'ann al-mas'uuliin kullahum naazliin hinaak. لا، في فندق البحر الاحمر، لأن المسؤولين كلهم نازلين هناك.  
 who, which alli ألي  
 sitting jaalis جالس  
 in the morning fiṣ-ṣubuH في الصبح
- A. Those who were sitting in the office this morning? humma alli kaanu jaalsiin fil-maktab fiṣ-ṣubuH? هم الي كانوا جالسين في المكتب في الصبح؟
- B. Yes, the ones which you saw [them]. iiwa, humma n-naas alli inta suftahum. ايوه، هم الناس الي انت اشفتهم.

Structure Sentences

1. He arrived on time. waṣal fil-maw9ad. وصل في الموعد.
2. He arrived in the evening. waṣal fil-masa. وصل في المساء.
3. He slept because he is tired. naam li'annu ta9baan. نام لأنه تعب.
4. [It is] you who are responsible. inta alli mas'uul. انت الي مسؤول.

- |   |   |                                     |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 5. We all stayed in a big hotel.                  | kullana nazalina fi fundug kabiir.                | كلنا نزلنا في فندق كبير             |
| 6. Did he go upstairs or downstairs?              | ɕili9 foog walla nazal taHat?                     | عالع فوق ولا نزل تحت؟               |
| 7. Who is the man who is standing there?          | miin ar-rijjaal alli waagif hinaak?               | مين الرجال الي واقف هناك؟           |
| 8. I want the suitcase which I bought yesterday.  | abgha ɕ-ɕanɕa alli aɕtareetaha ams.               | ابغس الشنطة الي اشتريتها امس.       |
| 9. Give me all the things which you took from me. | addiini kull al-Haaɕaat alli axadtahum min 9indi. | اديني كل الحاجات الي اخذتهم من عندي |
| 10. He was sitting there.                         | kaan gaa9id hinaak.                               | كان قاعد هناك                       |

Grammatical Notes

1. /li'ann/ means 'because', and may be used alone or with pronoun suffixes:

li'aan al-mas'uuliin kullahum naazliin hinaak.	because all the officials are staying there
naam li'annu ta9baan.	He slept because he was tired.
laazim asta'zin li'anni at'axxart.	I must be leaving because I'm late.

2. /ɕubuH/ and /masa/ are the forms used ordinarily with reference to 'morning' and 'evening' (we saw these used for 'a.m.' and 'p.m.' in Lesson 12). /ɕabaasH/ and /masaa'/ are classical equivalents of these words, most often reserved for use in the expressions 'Good morning' and 'Good evening'.

3. /kull/, 'all', is used before a definite, plural noun. It may also be used with pronoun endings. (cf. Structure Sentences 5 and 9.)

kullahum	all of them
kullakum	all of you (p)
kullana	all of us

kull al-Haaɕaat	all the things
kull an-naas	all the people

4. /mas'uul/, literally, 'responsible', is used idiomatically for 'official' (as a noun).

5. /nazal, yinzal/, literally, 'to descend', is used idiomatically to mean 'staying' in a hotel or home.

6. /alli/, 'which, who, whom', is not declined. It is used to introduce a phrase or clause, as a relative pronoun. If the clause includes a verb which takes a direct or indirect object, an object pronoun is also used. (This sounds redundant in English):

humma alli kaanu jaalsiin	they who were sitting
humma alli inta ɕuftahum	they whom you saw [them]

aš-šaṅṭa alli aštareetaha ams	the suitcase which I bought [it] yesterday
al-Haaḡaat alli axadtahum	the things which I took [them]
ar-rijjaal alli addeetu fuluus	the man to whom I gave [him] money

/alli/ may also be used to mean 'he who', 'those who', 'whoever':

alli yiHubbyiji yigulli. Whoever wants to come, tell me.

7. /fil-maw9ad/, 'on time' (literally, 'in the appointment'), is an idiom.
8. /foog/, 'above', and /taHat/, 'below', can also be used to mean 'upstairs' and 'downstairs'.
9. /ga9ad, yug9ud/ is another common word meaning 'to sit'.

Vocabulary Notes

maw9ad, mawaa9iid	appointment	موعد مواعيد
šaṅṭa, šunaṭ	suitcase, briefcase, purse	سُنْطَة سُنْطَة
waziir, wuzara	minister (of government)	وزير وزراء
fundug, fanaadig	hotel	فندق فنادق
mas'uul, -a, -iin	responsible, ('official')	مسؤول -ين
nazal, yinzal	descend, ('stay')	نزل ينزل
ṭili9, yiṭla9	ascend	طلع يطلع
jalas, yijlis	sit	جلس يجلس
ga9ad, yug9ud	sit	قعد يقعد
wigif, yiwgaf	stand	وقف يوقف

Drills

1. I have an appointment in the Red Sea Hotel. 9indi maw9ad fi fundug al-baHr al-aHmar. عندى موعد فى فندق البحر الاحمر.

Substitute:

at the American Embassy  
at the Ministry of Petroleum  
with officials of the government  
in the evening  
at the airport  
with the Minister of Communications  
with my friends  
at school  
at the Ministry of Defense

2. You (m) must go down-stairs. laazim tinzal taHat. لازم تنزل تحت.

Substitute:

go upstairs  
sit here  
stand beside the door  
you (p)  
bring your son too  
come back in the evening



you (f)  
see her soon  
study English in school  
go on time

3. Substitute the first or second half of the sentence, repeating the question and its answer:

Example: Why did he sleep? Because he's tired.

leeš huwwa naam? → li'annu ta9baan. لير هو نام؟ ← لأنه تعبان.

Continue:

Why did he sleep?	Because he arrived late.
Why didn't he come?	Because he arrived late.
Why didn't she come?	Because she arrived late.
Why didn't she come?	Because she doesn't agree.
Why didn't you (m) go?	Because I don't agree.
Why didn't you (m) go?	Because I don't have much money.
Why didn't you (m) spend much?	Because I don't have much money.
Why didn't you (p) spend much?	Because we don't have much money.
Why didn't you (p) spend much?	Because we didn't like the things.
Why didn't he spend much?	Because he didn't like the things.

4. Who are they who were sitting there?

miin humma alli kaanu  
jaalsiin hinaak?

مين هم الي كانوا  
جالسين هناك؟

Substitute:

who were standing there  
who were staying in the hotel  
who were returning  
who were coming upstairs  
who were going home  
who were coming here  
who were carrying the suitcases  
who were sleeping in the room  
who were responsible

5. They are the people whom you saw.

humma n-naas alli inta  
šuftahum.

هم الناس الي انت  
شفتهم

Substitute:

whom you know  
whom I brought in my car  
whom I asked about  
whom I gave money to  
whom I greeted  
whom I took home

6. I want the suitcase which I bought yesterday.

abgha š-šanta alli  
aštareetaha ams.

ابغى الشنطة الي  
اشتريتها امس

Substitute:

which I saw yesterday  
the table

the new chair  
which he brought from the office  
which my husband likes  
the books  
which you (m) are carrying  
the coffee  
which is in that cup  
which you (m) can't drink

Situations

1.  
A. Let's go see the man who arrived yesterday.  
B. OK, in a couple hours.  
A. Why can't you come now?  
B. Because I have to sleep, I'm tired.  
A. I'll come at 7:00.  
B. Fine.
  
2.  
A. Do you know Mr. Muhammad?  
B. No, but I've heard about him.  
A. He lives next to us.  
B. I know that he is in the Ministry of Defense.  
A. Yes, I'm not sure where exactly. In the minister's office, I think.
  
3.  
A. Bring us coffee, please.  
B. How many?  
A. Four. And one tea with sugar.  
B. Do you (f) want cream?  
A. Of course. Then ('later') at 3:00 we have an appointment at the university.  
Can you take us in the car?  
B. Yes. When will you (p) return?  
A. After about an hour, if God wills.

LESSON 24

Dialogue

(In a front office)

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| A. Please, is Mr. Mahmoud here?   | min faqlak, as-sayyid maHmuud mawjuud?  | من فقلك، السيد محمود موجود؟                                  |
| he went out   | xaraj   | خرج  |
| B. No, he's gone out. again   | la', xaraj. taani   | لا، خرج. ثاني  |
| A. Will he be back again?   | raH-yiji taani?   | رغ يجي ثاني؟   |
| B. In a little while, have a seat. message  | ba9d šwayya, atfađđal. risaala  | بعد شوية، اتفضل. رسالة                                       |
| A. May I leave him a message?   | mumkin asiblu risaala?  | مكن اسيله رسالة؟   |
| B. Certainly. project number telephone  | atfađđal. mašruu9 ragam tilifoon  | اتفضل. مشروع رقم تليفون                                      |
| A. Tell him that Mr. Jones wants to talk to him about our project. Do you have my telephone number? | gullu innu mistar Jones yibgha yitkallamu 9an mašruu9ana. 9indak ragam tilifooni? | قلله انه مستر جونز بيخس يتكلمه عن مشروعنا. عندك رقم تليفوني؟ |
| B. No. What is the number?  | la'. kam ar-ragam?  | لا. كم الرقم؟  |
| A. 25875  | xamsa wu 9iškriin, tamanmiyya wu xamsa wu sab9iin.                                | خمسة وعشرين، ثمانية وخمسة وسبعين.                            |

Structure Sentences

- |                                    |                                 |                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Is Mr. Mahmoud here?            | as-sayyid maHmuud fii?          | السيد محمود فيه؟      |
| 2. We'll be ('we are') home today. | al-yoom ihna fii.               | اليوم احنا فيه.       |
| 3. Can I get you coffee?           | mumkin ajiblak gahwa?           | مكن اجيبك قهوة؟       |
| 4. Is this for you (m)?            | haada lak?                      | هادا لك؟              |
| 5. Yes, this letter is for me.     | iiwa, haada l-jawaab liyya.     | ايوه، هادا الجواب لي. |
| 6. I owe you money.                | lak fuluus 9indi.               | لك فلوس عندي.         |
| 7. I owe Ahmad ten riyals.         | 9alayya 9ašara riyaal li aHmad. | علي عشرة ريال ل احمد. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /mawjuud/ (/mawjuuda/, /mawjuudiin/) may be used to mean 'present', 'in attendance'. Just as common is the use of /fii/ to mean 'present'. (cf. Structure Sentences 1 and 2.)
2. /taani/ may be used as an adverb to mean 'again'.
3. /ragam/, 'number', is the classical word; the borrowed word /nimra/ is often heard.
4. Telephone numbers are usually given in tens or hundreds, the first two and then the last three:

25875	xamsa wu 9iṣriin, tamanmiyya wu xamsa wu sab9iin
27416	sab9a wu 9iṣriin, arba9miyya wu siṭṭa9ṣ

If the number combinations are unusual, modifications may be made:

20005	9iṣriin alf wu xamsa
11002	iHḍa9ṣ alf w itneen

If you use individual numbers, you will be understood.

5. The indirect object is usually suffixed to the verb. If there is no verb, the word /l-/ , 'to, for', is used with a pronoun as an independent word.

lu	to him, for him	لَهُ
laha	to her, for her	
lahum	to them, for them	
lak	to you (m), for you (m)	لَكَ
liki	to you (f), for you (f)	
lakum	to you (p), for you (p)	
liyya	to me, for me	لِيَّ
lana	to us, for us	

hadool al-kutub lana	Those books are for <u>us</u> .
iHna.	
lak katiir mistanni	Have you been waiting here
hina?	long?
liyya hina tult saa9a.	I've been here for 20 minutes.

/l-/ can be used with money to mean 'is owed to'. Owing may be expressed with /9ind/or /9ala/:

liyya xamsa riyaal.	I am owed five riyals. ( 'To me five riyals.' )
liyya xamsa riyaal	You owe me five riyals.
9indak.	( 'To me five riyals with you.' )
9aleena fuluus	We owe a lot of money.
katiir.	( 'On us a lot of money.' )

6. /risaala/, 'message', may also mean 'note' or 'letter'; it is the classical word. However, the word /jawaab/ (literally, 'answer') is usually used in this dialect to mean 'letter'.

Vocabulary Notes

maşruu9, maşaarii9  
risaala, rasaayil  
jawaab, -aat  
raqam, arqaam  
nimra, nimar  
tilifoon, -aat

project  
note, message  
letter  
number  
number  
telephone

مشروع  
رسالة  
رسائل  
جواب - ات  
رقم  
رقم  
نمره  
تليفون - ات

Hisaab, -aat  
şuğhul, aşghaal  
taşmiim, -aat  
xuţta, xuţtaş  
ţalab, -aat  
muştaraawat  
mubii9aat  
ittifaag, -aat

account  
work  
design  
plan  
order  
purchases  
sales  
agreement

حساب - ات  
شغل  
اشغال  
تصميم - ات  
خطة  
خطط  
طلب - ات  
مشتريات  
مبيعات  
اتفاق - ات

xaraj, yuxruj  
daxal, yudxul

go out  
enter

خرج  
يخرج  
دخل  
يدخل

Drills

1. May I leave him a message?

mumkin asiblu risaala?

ممكن اسيله رسالة؟

Substitute:

bring you (m) coffee?  
carry this suitcase for you?  
make an appointment for you (p)?  
write her a letter?  
do anything for you (f)?  
give them the money?  
buy you (m) a glass of tea?

2. Is this for you (m)?

haada lak?

هادا لك؟

Substitute:

for us  
for you (p)  
for me  
for her  
for you (f)  
for them

3. I owe you money.

lak fuluus 9indi.

لك فلوس عندي.

Substitute:

she owes you  
they owe you  
they owe us  
you (m) owe us  
she owes us  
she owes her  
I owe her  
I owe them

4. My telephone number is 25875. ragam tilifooni xamsa wu 9iṣriin, wu tamanmiyya xamsa wu sab9iin. رقم تليفوني خمسة وعشرين وثمانية خمسة وسبعين

Substitute:

63957  
21020  
29000  
65338  
62117  
27504

5. He wants to talk about our project. yibgha yitkallam 9an maṣruu9ana. يبغى يتكلم عن مشروعنا

Substitute:

I  
our account  
our plan  
our work  
we  
our agreement  
our design  
our order  
our purchases  
he  
his project  
his sales

6. When did he go out? mita xaraj? متى خرج؟

Substitute:

she  
they  
entered  
you (f)  
he  
you (p)  
went out  
you (m)

Situations

1.
  - A. Where is Mr. Sharif?
  - B. He went out half an hour ago. He said he'll return soon.
  - A. May I wait?
  - B. Of course. Can I get you something?
  - A. Yes, either coffee or tea.
2.
  - A. I want to see the plan.
  - B. Which plan?
  - A. The design of the new building.
  - B. Mr. Jones took it and left.
  - A. Tell him that I was here. I'll leave you my telephone number.
  - B. Where will you be?
  - A. At the hotel, after 3:00.

3.  
A. I owe you money. How much?  
B. About 30 riyals, I'm not sure. I forgot.  
A. Take 30 now, and I'll see the account again later.  
B. OK, thanks. Good night.  
A. Good night.

LESSON 25

Dialogue

(On the telephone)

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| A. Hello. Who are you, sir?                                   | aloo. miin Haḍratak?   | آلو. مين حضرتك؟                                    |
| B. This is Mr. Jones. Is Mahmoud there?                       | ana mistar Jones. maHmuud fii?   | انا مستر جونز محمود فيه؟                           |
| if you please   | law samaHt   | لو سمحت  |
| you (m) remain  | xalliik  | خليك   |
| line  | xaṭṭ   | خط   |
| A. Just a minute, please. Stay on the line.                   | dagiiga law samaHt. xalliik 9al-xaṭṭ.  | دقيقة لو سمحت. خليك عالخط.                         |
| C. Hello, this is Mahmoud. ('I am Mahmoud')                   | aloo. ana maHmuud.   | آلو. انا محمود.                                    |
| B. Hello Mahmoud. How are you?                                | ahlan maHmuud. keef Haalak?  | اهلا محمود. كيف حالك؟                              |
| I tried   | Haawalt  | حاولت  |
| I call you  | akallimak  | الكلمك   |
| I found   | lageet   | لقيت   |
| busy  | maṣghuul   | مشغول  |
| C. Fine, thanks. I tried to call you and found the line busy. | ṭayyib, al-Hamdu lillaah. ana Haawalt akallimak, wu lageet al-xaṭṭ maṣghuul. | طيب، الحمد لله. أنا حاولت الكلمك ولقيت الخط مشغول. |
| director  | mudiir   | مدير   |
| B. Maybe the director was using the telephone.                | yimkin al-mudiir kaan b-yista9mil at-tilifoon.                               | يمكن المدير كان بيستعمل التليفون.                  |
| C. When can I see you in the office?                          | mita agdar aṣuufak fil-maktab?   | متا اقدر اشوفك في المكتب؟                          |
| B. I'm free today in the afternoon.                           | ana faaḍi l-yoom ba9d aḍ-ḍuhur.  | انا فاضي اليوم بعد الظهر.                          |

Structure Sentences

- |  |                                     |                             |
|--|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. We tried to arrive early.                       | Haawalna niwṣal badri.              | حاولنا نوصل بدري.           |
| 2. We were writing letters.                        | kunna b-niktub jawaabaat.           | كنا بنكتب جوابات.           |
| 3. I was waiting there.                            | kunt mistanni hinaak.               | كنت مستني هناك.             |
| 4. You can find pretty things at his place (shop). | mumkin tilaagi Haajaat Hilwa 9indu. | ممكن تلاقي حاجات حلوة عنده. |



- |  |                               |                       |
|--|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 5. Someone called me on the telephone. | waaHid kallamni bit-tilifoon. | واحد كلمني بالتليفون. |
| 6. Someone is talking.                 | aHad b-yitkallam.             | احد بيتكلم.           |
| 7. Nobody answers.                     | maHad yirudd.                 | ماحد يرد.             |
| 8. Wrong number.                       | an-nimra ghalaṭ.              | العمرة غلط.           |

Grammatical Notes

1. /Haawal, yiHaawil/, 'to try', is used as a helping verb with other verbs. This means 'try' in the sense of 'attempt'; /jarrab, yijarrib/ means 'try' in the sense of 'try out':

Haawalt akallimak.	I tried to call you.
jarrabt aš-šaahi.	I tried the tea.

2. /kallam, yikallim/, 'to talk to', is used with a direct object:

Haawalt akallimak.	I tried to talk to you (call you).
kallamni bit-tilifoon.	Call me on the telephone.

Note that /atkallam/, 'to speak', is used with /ma9a/ before the object:

laazim atkallam ma9a	I must talk to my friend.
šaahbi.	

3. /laga, yilaagi/, 'to find', is slightly irregular in the perfect tense because it is missing a root consonant:

<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>		
huwwa laga	yilaagi	يلاقي	لقتي
hiyya lagat	tilaagi	تلاقين	لقتن
humma lagu	yilaagu	يلاقوا	لقتوا
inta lageet	tilaagi	تلاقي	لقتيت
inti lageeti	tilaagi	تلاقين	لقتيتن
intu lageetu	tilaagu	تلاقوا	لقتيتوا
ana lageet	alaagi	الاقى	نقتيت
iHna lageena	nilaagi	نلاقوا	نقتينا

4. /kaan/ may be used with an imperfect verb to form the "past progressive" tense, i.e., 'was doing':

al-mudiir kaan yista9mil	The director was using the
at-tilifoon.	telephone.
hiyya kaanat tiktub.	She was writing.

5. /b-/ is prefixed to an imperfect verb when speaking of "continuous" or on-going action (it is optional):

huwwa b-yitkallam	He is talking now.
daHHiin.	
kaan b-yitkallam.	He was talking.
kaan b-yista9mil	He was using the telephone.
at-tilifoon.	
hiyya b-tiktub jawaab.	She is writing a letter.

This prefix is optionally used for habitual or recurring action (see page 110).

6. /aHad/ is the usual word for 'someone'; it has only one form. Sometimes you will hear /waaHid/ (/waHda/) used as well. (cf. Structure Sentences 5 and 6.)

Vocabulary Notes

mudiir, -iin*	director, manager, boss	مدیر -ین
mudiir maktab	appointments secretary (for a high official)	مدیر مکتب
musaa9id, -iin*	assistant	مساعد -ین
naayib, nuwaaab	deputy	نائب نواب
sikirteer, -iin*	secretary	سکرٹیر -ین
mušrif, -iin*	supervisor	مشرف -ین
muwazzaf, -iin*	employee	موظف -ین
aHad	someone	احد
maHad	nobody	محد
xaṭṭ, xuṭuṭ	line	خط خطوط
mašghuul, -iin	busy	مشغول -ین
xarbaan, -iin	out of order	خرابان -ین

\*(The above nouns referring to employment titles can be made feminine by adding /-a/, and the plural /-iin/ would change to /-aat/.)

Drills

1. Stay on the line. xalliik 9al-xaṭṭ. خلیک عالخط.

(to a man)

Substitute:

(to a woman)  
(to a group)

2. I tried to call you (m). Haawalt akallimak. حاولت اکلمک.

Substitute:

We tried to call you (m).  
We tried to call them.  
We tried to call all of you.  
We tried to see all of you.  
She tried to write to you (p).  
She tried to write to us.  
She tried to write to him.  
She tried to call him on the telephone.  
I tried to call him on the telephone.  
I tried to answer him.  
He tried to answer him.  
They tried to answer him.

3. State the question, then answer it.

Example:

Did he talk to you (m)? Yes, he talked to me.  
huwwa kallamak? → iiwa, kallamni.

هو کلمک؟ ← ایوه، کلمنی.

Continue:

Did she talk to you (m)? Yes, she talked to me.  
 Did she talk to them? Yes, she talked to them.  
 Did she talk to him? No, she did not talk to him.  
 Did you (p) talk to him? Yes, we talked to him.  
 Did you (f) talk to him? No, I did not talk to him.  
 Did they talk to her? No, they did not talk to her.  
 Did they talk to you(m)? Yes, they talked to me.

4. Did you (m) call him? kállamtu?

كلمته ؟

Repeat the question, and answer:

Yes, but I found the line busy.  
 Yes, but nobody answered.  
 Yes, but I waited a long time.  
 Yes, but he wasn't there. (/mawjuud/).  
 Yes, but he wasn't free.  
 Yes, but I talked to his assistant.  
 No, I forgot his number.  
 No, the telephone is out of order.

5. The director was using the telephone. al-mudiir kaan b-yista9mil at-tilifoocn.

المدير كان يستعمل التليفون.

Substitute:

was coming in\*  
 was going to the Ministry of Interior  
 was writing a letter  
 was talking to somebody  
 was going out  
 had to leave  
 was sitting outside  
 was buying expensive things

\*Remember to use active participles where appropriate.

6. I must speak to the manager. laazim akallim al-mudiir.

لازم اكلم المدير.

Substitute:

the employees  
 the supervisor  
 the secretary (f)  
 the deputy  
 the appointments secretary  
 the assistant  
 the minister's assistant

#### Situations

1.
  - A. Call him on the telephone.
  - B. I can't, the line is busy.
  - A. Try again.
  - B. Now nobody answers.

2.  
A. I want to see the director.  
B. I'm sorry, he's out.  
A. Can I see his deputy?  
B. Just a moment, I'll ask. No, he's not free now.  
A. I'll leave him a message.  
B. Go ahead.

3.  
A. Where is the company president staying?  
B. In the Red Sea Hotel.  
A. Is it near here?  
B. Not far. Take a taxi.  
A. How much would it cost?  
B. Only two riyals.

LESSON 26

Dialogue

(In an office)

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| A. Is Khalid here?  | xaaliḍ hina?  | خالد هنا؟   |
| B. Not yet.   | lissa9.   | ليس.  |
| have him  | xallii  | خليه  |
| as soon as  | awwal-ma  | اول ما  |
| A. Have him call me as soon as he arrives.                                | xallii yikallimni awwal-ma yiwṣal.                                  | خليه يكلمني اول ما يوصل.                            |
| very well; as you wish (literally 'ready') service                        | Haaḍir xidma  | حاضر خدمة   |
| B. Very well, any service. Where will you be?                             | Haaḍir, ayy xidma. feen Ha-tikuun?                                  | حاضر، اي خدمة؟ فين حتكون؟                           |
| until   | ileen   | الين  |
| A. I'll be in the office until five o'clock. Then I'll go to the airport. | H-akuun fil-maktab ileen as-saa9a xamsa. ba9deen H-aruuH al-maṭaar. | حاكون في المكتب الين الساعة خمسة بعدين خارج المطار. |
| B. Why?   | leeṣ?   | ليش؟  |
| traveling   | misaafir  | مسافر   |
| airplane  | ṭayyaara  | طيارة   |
| A. I'm going on the five o'clock plane.                                   | ana misaafir 9ala ṭayyaarat as-saa9a xamsa, in ṣaa' aḷḷaah.         | انا مسافر على طيارة الساعة خمسة ان شاء الله.        |
| before  | gabl-ma   | قبلما   |
| B. Maybe he will meet you here before you go.                             | yimkin huwwa yigaabilak hina gabl-ma timṣi.                         | يمكن هو يقابلك هنا قبلما تمشي.                      |

Structure Sentences

- |  |                                   |                         |
|--|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. When you (m) arrive, tell me.           | lamman tiwṣal, gulli.             | لمن توصل قللي.          |
| 2. He left without saying goodbye to them. | miṣi biduun-ma yisallim 9aleehum. | مشي بدون ما يسلم عليهم. |
| 3. I must see him before he leaves.        | laazim aṣuufu gabl-ma yimṣi.      | لازم اشوفه قبلما يمشي.  |
| 4. We stood up after she entered.          | wigifna ba9d-ma daxalat.          | وقفنا بعدما دخلت.       |

- |  |                                      |                                   |
|--|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 5. Every time I travel I forget something at home. | kull-ma asaafir ansa Haaja fil-beet. | كلما اسافر انسى<br>حاجة في البيت. |
| 6. We went to France last year.                    | saafarna faraansa s-sana l-maaḍya.   | سافرنا فرانسما السنة<br>الماضية.  |
| 7. They haven't come yet.                          | lissa9 ma joo.                       | لسع ما جوا.                       |

Grammatical Notes

1. /xalla, yixalli/, 'to leave', 'to let', is used alone or as a helping verb. It has several translations in English, depending on context:

xallii.	Leave it [here].
xalliik 9al-xaṭṭ.	Stay on the line. ('Let you be on the line')
xalliik hina.	Stay here.
xalliiki 9indana.	Stay (f) at our house.
xalliikum jaalsiin.	Let them stay seated.
xalliiha talaata.	Let it be three (price).
xallii yimṣi.	Let him go. Have him go.
xalliikum yiṣṭaghilu.	Let them work. Make them work.

2. /awwal-ma/ and /gabl-ma/ are examples of a set of words which precede a verb and require /-ma/ before the verb (in this case, it is not a negative word):

awwal-ma yiwṣal	as soon as he arrives	اول ما يوصل
gabl-ma yimṣi	before he leaves	قبل ما يمشي
ba9d-ma daxalat	after she entered	بعد ما دخلت
biduun-ma yisallim 9aleehum	without greeting them	بدون ما يسلم عليهم
kull-ma asaafir	whenever I travel	كلما اسافر
liHadd-ma yiji	until he comes	لحد ما يجي
ileen-ma yiji	until he returns	الينما يجي

- Both /liHadd-ma/ and /ileen-ma/ mean 'until' and are used with verbs. They can be used with time expressions, in which case the suffix /-ma/ is dropped:

li-Hadd as-saa9a xamsa	until five o'clock
ileen as-saa9a xamsa	until five o'clock

3. Note that /liHadd-ma/ is an example of a word in which three consonants occur in a cluster. In a case where three or four consonants would occur together, a short vowel is inserted to break up the cluster. This is not written in the text, however, because it is not really part of the word; it merely facilitates pronunciation:

(actual pronunciation)

liHadd-ma	liHadd <sup>i</sup> -ma
ṣuft muHammad	ṣuft <sup>i</sup> muHammad
nuṣṣ saa9a	nuṣṣ <sup>i</sup> saa9a

4. /Haadir/, 'ready' is usually used as a response to an order.

5. /lamman/ is also used before verbs, and means 'when' as a subordinating conjunction (not a question):

lamman waşalna	when we arrived
lamman şuftu	when I saw him

6. /lissa9/ may be used with a negative verb (see Structure Sentence 7) or alone, to mean 'not yet'. Remember that with any other predicate, it means 'still' (Lesson 12). In the case of /lissa9/, /ma/ is a negative word:

lissa9 ma raaH.	He hasn't gone yet.
lissa9 ma gaabaltu.	I haven't met him yet.

7. /saafar/, 'to travel', implies a long distance; otherwise, /raaH/ is used. /saafar/, like /raaH/, is used without a preposition:

saafarna faraansa.	We traveled to France.
--------------------	------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

şayyaara, -aat	airplane	طيارة -ات
xidma, xadamaat	service	خدمة خدّامات
saafar, yisaafir	travel	سافر يسافر
xalla, yixalli (xalleet)	let, leave	خلص يخلي (خليت)

Drills

1. Have him call me.	<u>xallii yikallimni.</u>	خليه يكلمني
----------------------	---------------------------	-------------

Substitute:

have her  
have them  
see me  
see us  
have him  
come to us  
come to him  
return to him  
return to me  
give me money  
have her  
buy me coffee

2. Let him go.	<u>xallii yimşi.</u>	خليه يمشي
----------------	----------------------	-----------

Substitute:

travel  
let her  
let me  
enter  
let them  
meet him  
take the suitcases  
let us  
try  
stand here a little while

3. Stay (m) here.

xallik hina.

خليك هنا.

Substitute:

at my house  
there  
on the line  
standing  
at the airport  
waiting until I arrive  
downstairs

4. I'm going to travel  
( 'traveling' )  
tomorrow.

ana misaafir bukra.

انا مسافر بكره.

Substitute:

we  
were traveling last month  
she  
is traveling today  
was traveling the day before yesterday  
they  
are traveling soon  
are going overseas next week

5. When we arrive, tell me. lamman niwṣal, gulli.

لعمز نوصل قللي.

Substitute:

before we arrive  
as soon as we arrive  
as soon as they arrive  
after they arrive  
after you (m) arrive  
before you (m) arrive  
before she arrives  
when she arrives  
when you (p) arrive  
as soon as you (p) arrive  
as soon as you (f) arrive  
every time you (f) arrive

6. They still haven't come. lissa9 ma joo.

لسع ما جوا.

Substitute:

seen her  
I  
called her  
called my sister  
gone to my sister's house  
we  
met the bank president  
you (m)  
talked to me about the proposal  
spent the money  
she  
drunk the tea  
he  
written the letters  
gone upstairs



7. He sat here until I met him.      jalas hina liHadd-ma gaabaltu.      جلس هنا لحد ما قابلته .

Substitute:

until I returned  
 until I brought him the books  
 until we sat beside him  
 until they stood up  
 until all of them went out  
 until the director came  
 until they closed the office

8. He went without seeing me.      raaH biduun-ma yisuufani.      راح بدون ما يشوفني .

Substitute:

without greeting me  
 without saying anything  
 without asking about my health  
 without closing the door  
 without knowing why  
 without buying anything  
 without meeting his assistant  
 without drinking the tea

Situations

1.
  - A. On which plane are you (m) traveling?
  - B. The four o'clock plane.
  - A. Good. It's still early.
  - B. The man hasn't brought my suitcases yet. Where could they be?  
 (/feen yikuunu/)
  - A. Ask the clerk ('employee').
  - B. When he returns, I'll ask him.
2.
  - A. Excuse me, may I ask a question?
  - B. Of course, any service.
  - A. I don't know where my suitcases are.
  - B. After you entered the airport, where did you put them?
  - A. I gave them to a man who was standing beside me.
  - B. He took them to the airline company, I'm sure.
3.
  - A. Stay here until I return.
  - B. How long?
  - A. Not more than ten minutes.
  - B. I want to drink something.
  - A. You can buy coffee or tea over there.
  - B. Yes, of course. Thanks.

LESSON 27

Dialogue

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| A. Do you speak Arabic?  | titkallam 9arabi?  | تتكلم عربي؟   |
| I study  | azaakir  | أذاكر   |
| every  | kull   | كل  |
| B. A little. I study an hour every day.                        | šwayya. azaakir 9arabi saa9a kull yoom.                              | شويه . اذاكر عربي ساعة كل يوم                       |
| in order to  | 9ašaan   | عشان  |
| A. I'm studying English in order to go to America.             | ana adrus ingiliizi 9ašaan asaafir amriika.                          | انا ادرس انكليزي عشان اسافر أمريكا.                 |
| we practice  | nitmarran  | نتمرن   |
| together   | ma9a ba9d  | مع بعض  |
| B. We can practice together.                                   | mumkin nitmarran ma9a ba9d.  | مكن نتمرن مع بعض                                    |
| A. Yes. You speak English with me and I speak Arabic with you. | iiwa. inta titkallam ingiliizi ma9aaya w ana atkallam 9arabi ma9aak. | ايوه . انت تتكلم انكليزي معاي وانا اتكلم عربي معاك. |
| late afternoon   | il-9ašur   | المصر   |
| B. Can you come to my house late this afternoon?               | tigdar tijiili fil-9ašur?  | تقدر تجيلي في المصر؟                                |
| A. Of course.  | tab9an.  | طبعا .  |
| don't  | laa  | لا  |
| B. Don't forget.   | laa tinsa.   | لا تنس .  |

Structure Sentences

- |  |                             |                       |
|--|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. We must study.                          | laazim nizaakir.            | لازم نذاكر .          |
| 2. I studied for six months.               | darast sitta šuhuur.        | درست ستة شهور .       |
| 3. We saw each other yesterday.            | šufna ba9d ams.             | شفتنا بعض امن .       |
| 4. Do you (m) agree with me?               | inta muwaafiq ma9aaya?      | انت موافق معاي؟       |
| 5. You (m) must speak with him.            | laazim titkallam ma9aa.     | لازم تتكلم معاه .     |
| 6. I have an appointment in the afternoon. | 9indi maw9ad ba9d ađ-đuhur. | عندي موعد بعد الظهر . |

- |   |                           |                    |
|---|---------------------------|--------------------|
| 7. Come (m) in order to see them.         | ta9aal 9aṣaan tiṣuufahum. | تعال عشان تشوفهم   |
| 8. He went because he has an appointment. | raaH 9aṣaan 9indu maw9ad. | راح عشان عنده موعد |

Grammatical Notes

1. /zaakar/ refers to 'study' in the sense of a momentary activity, i.e., studying at a desk. /daras/ refers to 'study' in the sense of pursuing an academic subject.

2. /kull/ may be used with indefinite words in the singular, to mean 'each' or 'every':

kull yoom	every day
kull sana	every year
kull waaHid	every one, everyone

Remember that this contrasts with its use meaning 'all' (Lesson 23).

3. /9aṣaan/ means 'in order to' when used with a verb.

adrus ingiliizi 9aṣaan asaafir amriika.	I'm studying English in order to go to America.
--	--

ta9aal 9aṣaan tiṣuufahum.	Come in order to see them.
------------------------------	----------------------------

It may also be used to mean 'because' (this is a borrowing from the Egyptian dialect; /li'ann/ is more common).

raaH 9aṣaan 9indu maw9ad.
------------------------------

When used with a noun, /9aṣaan/ means 'for' (Lesson 16).

4. /ba9ḍ/ is usually translated 'each other' in English; it refers to a reciprocal action. It may be used as a direct or indirect object:

nitmarran ma9a ba9ḍ.	We practice with each other.
ṣufna ba9ḍ.	We saw each other.
katabna li ba9ḍ.	We wrote to each other.

5. /ma9a/, when used with pronoun objects, has the base form /ma9aa-/:

ma9aa	with him	معاه
ma9aaha	with her	معاها
ma9aahum	with them	معاهم
ma9aak	with you (m)	معاك
ma9aaki	with you (f)	معاك
ma9aakum	with you (p)	معاكم
ma9aaya	with me	معاي
ma9aana	with us	معانا

6. Times of the day are many in Saudi Arabia, because they may also refer to the five prayer times (these are starred):

al-fajr*	dawn	الفجر
aṣ-ṣubuḥ	morning	الصبح
aḍ-ḍuhur*	noon	الظهر
al-9aṣur*	late afternoon	المصر
al-maghrib*	sunset	المنرب
al-masa	evening	المسا
al-9iṣa*	evening	الوشا
al-leel	night	الليل

The prayer-times are frequently used with /gabl/, 'before', and /ba9d/, 'after':

ba9d aḍ-ḍuhur	afternoon
gabl al-maghrib	before sunset
	(etc.)

7. The negative command in Arabic is formed by using the word /laa/ with the imperfect verb:

laa tiruuH.	Don't go (m).
laa tiruuHi.	Don't go (f).
laa tiruuHu.	Don't go (p).
laa tinsa.	Don't forget (m).
laa tikallimha.	Don't talk (m) to her.

8. /atmarran/, 'to practice', takes the preposition /9ala/ if followed by a noun:

laazim atmarran 9ala l-9arabi.	I must practice Arabic.
-----------------------------------	-------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

sawa*	together	سوا
zaakar, yizaakir	study	ذاكر يذاكر
nisi, yinsa (nisiit)	forget	نسي ينسى (نسييت)
atmarran, yitmarran	practice	اتمرن يتمرن

\*This alternates with /ma9a ba9d/.

Drills

1. I study every day.      azaakir kull yoom.      اذاكر كل يوم

Substitute:

- I go
- every year
- every week
- I meet him
- I see them
- every ten minutes
- every time
- I talk to her
- every night
- every month

2. Come (m) in order to see them.      ta9aal 9ašaan tišūufahum.      تعال عشان تشوفهم.

Substitute:

go (m)  
in order to ask him  
in order to bring money from the bank  
in order to study  
sit down (f)  
in order to use the telephone  
speak Arabic (p)  
in order to practice with me  
in order to understand the people

3. We saw each other yesterday.      šufna ba9d ams.      شفنا بعض اms.

Substitute:

went with each other  
agreed with each other  
they  
met each other  
sat beside each other  
you (p)  
talked to each other  
worked together  
greeted each other  
we  
studied in the university together  
liked each other  
wrote to each other

4. You (m) must speak English with me.      laazim titkallam ingiliizi ma9aaya.      لازم تتكلم انكليزي معاي.

Substitute:

with us  
with him  
with them  
with her  
with all of them  
with the girls  
with the Americans  
with the secretary (f)

5. I have an appointment in the afternoon.      9indi maw9ad ba9d aq-duhur.      عندي موعد بعد الظهر.

Substitute:

after sunset  
after dawn  
before evening (prayer)  
in the evening  
at night  
after mid-afternoon  
in the morning  
at noon

6. Don't forget (m).

laa tinsa.

لا تنسَ

Substitute:

(to a man):

go  
come back early  
tell her

(to a woman):

try  
let him come  
leave your purse here

(to a group)

sit here  
go upstairs  
bring your children

7. Given the verb in the perfect tense (m, f, or p), change the sentence to a negative command.

Example: raaH badri. → laa tiruuH badri.

راج بدري ← لا تروح بدري

Continue:

zaakar fil-maktab.  
zaakarat fil-maktab.  
9amalat mawaa9iid katiir.  
katabu fil-kitaab.  
istannu.  
nazal fil-fundug.  
xallaahum yiju.

ذاكر في المكتب.  
ذاكرت في المكتب.  
عملت مواعيد كثير.  
كتبوا في الكتاب.  
استنوا.  
نزل في الفندق.  
خلاهم يجوا.

Situations

1.
  - A. Come with me.
  - B. I can't yet. I have to meet my boss.
  - A. OK, I'll wait an hour.
  - B. Don't go without me, please.
2.
  - A. Whom does he want to see?
  - B. The director of the company.
  - A. Have him leave him a note and come back later.
  - B. I already told him.
3.
  - A. Do you (p) know each other?
  - B. Yes, we met each other at school.
  - A. You are friends?
  - B. Yes, I've known Khalid for a long time.

LESSON 28

Dialogue

	professor	ustaaaz	استاذ
A.	Are you a professor here?	inta ustaaz hina?	انت استاذ هنا؟
	student	ṭaalib	طالب
	third (f)	taalta	ثالثة
B.	No, I'm a third-year student.	la', ana ṭaalib fi sana taalta.	لا، انا طالب في سنة ثالثة.
	college	kulliyya	كلية
	engineering	handasa	هندسة
	isn't that so?	muu kida?	مو كده؟
A.	In the College of Engineering, aren't you?	fi kulliyyat al-handasa, muu kida?	في كلية الهندسة، مو كده؟
	yes	illa	لا
	I was educated	at9allamt	اتعلمت
	Egypt	maṣur	مصر
	first (adverb)	fil-awwal	في الاول
	I finished	kammalt	كملت
	high school	saanawi	ثانوي
B.	Yes. I was educated in Egypt first and finished high school there.	illa. at9allamt fi maṣur fil-awwal wu kammalt saanawi hinaak.	الا. اتعلمت في مصر في الاول وكملت ثانوي هناك.
	at night	fil-leel	في الليل.
A.	Do you (p) study at night?	tidrusu fil-leel?	تدرسوا في الليل؟
	in the daytime	fin-nahaar	في النهار
B.	No, it's all in the daytime.	la', kullu fin-nahaar.	لا، كله في النهار.

Structure Sentences

1.	He is a junior high school teacher.	huwwa mudarris i9daadi.	هو مدرس اعدادي.
2.	She is in the first grade of elementary school.	hiyya fi sana uula ibtidaa'i.	هي في سنة اولى ابتدائي.

- |   |   |                               |
|---|---|-------------------------------|
| 3. My two children are in nursery school. (or: kindergarten). | awlaadi l-itneen fil-Haḡaana.               | اولادي الاثنين في الحضانه     |
| 4. There are many students in the College of Education.       | fii ṭalaba katiir fi kuilliyyat at-tarbiya. | فيه طلبة كثير في كلية التربية |
| 5. He is well educated.                                       | huwwa mit9allim kwayyis.                    | هو متعلم كويس                 |
| 6. You (m) must finish your education abroad.                 | laazim tikammil at-ta9liim barra.           | لازم تكمل التعليم برا         |
| 7. This is the last time.                                     | haadi aaxir marra.                          | هادي آخر مرة                  |
| 8. Where did you learn English?                               | feen at9allamt ingiliizi?                   | فين اتعلمت انكليزي؟           |

Grammatical Notes

1. The ordinal numerals are:

Masculine

awwal	اول
taani	ثاني
taalit	ثالث
raabi9	رابع
xaamis	خامس
saadis	سادس
saabi9	سابع
taamin	ثامن
taasi9	تاسع
9aaḡir	عاشر

Feminine

uula	اولى	first
taanya	ثانية	second
taalta	ثالثة	third
raab9a	رابعة	fourth
xaamsa	خامسة	fifth
saadsa	سادسة	sixth
saab9a	سابعة	seventh
taamna	ثامنة	eighth
taas9a	تاسعة	ninth
9aaḡra	عاشرة	tenth

Notice that from 'second' on, they follow a predictable vowel pattern.

If the ordinal numeral follows the noun, it must agree in gender:

al-beet al-awwal	the first house
al-marra t-taalta	the third time
marra taanya	a second time; another time

These numerals may also be used before the noun, in which case they remain masculine:

awwal ṡaari9*	the first street
raabi9 beet	the fourth house
raabi9 marra	the fourth time
raabi9 sana	the fourth year

\*Note the difference between this phrase and /awwal aṡ-ṡaari9/, 'at the beginning of the street' (Lesson 15).

/aaxir/, 'last', is usually used before nouns:

aaxir beet	the last house
aaxir marra	the last time



Ordinal numerals have a special form only for the numbers 1-10; after this, the regular numeral form is used, always after the noun:

al-beet al-iHḡa9š            the eleventh house  
al-marra l-xamaṣṡa9š        the fifteenth time

2. The "colleges" in Saudi universities are:

aadaab	Arts	آداب
9ulum	Sciences	علوم
ziraa9a	Agriculture	زراعة
tijaara	Commerce	تجارة
tarbiya	Education	تربية
handasa	Engineering	هندسة
ṣaydala	Pharmacy	صيدلة
ṡibb	Medicine	طب
iqṡiṣaad	Economics	اقتصاد

3. There are several words which may be translated 'education' in English:

wizaarat al-ma9aarif	The Ministry of Education (literally, 'knowledge')
kulliyyat at-tarbiya	The College of Education (literally, 'upbringing')
ta9liim	education, learning

4. /muu kida/, 'isn't that so?' is used after any statement, to check its correctness. It is equivalent to English 'isn't it?', 'aren't you?', etc., or 'n'est-ce pas?' in French. There are several common variations of this phrase, among them:

miš kida? (borrowed from Egyptian)  
muu ṣaHH?  
muu ṣaHiiH?

5. /illa/ is an emphatic way of saying 'yes'. It is also used in response to a negative question, to emphasize the affirmative answer. Another way of saying 'yes' is /ee na9am/ (this is more common in the eastern part of the country).

6. The levels of education in Saudi Arabia are:

Haḡaana	nursery school; kindergarten	حضانة
ibtidaa'i	elementary	ابتدائي
i9ḡaadi	intermediate (junior high)	اعداد في
saanawi	secondary (senior high)	ثانوي
jaam9a	university	جامعة
bakaluryoos	Bachelor's degree	بكالوريوس
majisteer	Master's degree	ماجستير
dukturaa	Doctor's degree	دكتورا

When used with the word /madrasa/, 'school', the adjective is feminine:

madrasa ibtidaa'iyya	elementary school
madrasa i9ḡaadiyya	intermediate school
madrasa saanawiyya	secondary school

7. To say 'both', 'all three', etc., the definite article is used with the numeral, after the noun:

awlaadi l-itneen	my two children; both of my children
------------------	--------------------------------------

awlaadi t-talaata all three of my children  
al-madaaris al-arba9a all four schools

Vocabulary Notes

ustaaaz, asaatiza	professor	استاذ اساتذة
mudarris, -iin (-aat)	teacher	مدرس مدرسين -ات
ṭaalib, ṭalaba (ṭullaab)*	student	طالب، طلبة (طلاب)
at9allam, yit9allim	be educated, learn	اتعلم يتعلم
kammal, yikammil	finish	كمل يكمل
mit9allim, -a, -iin	educated	متعلم -ين

\*This word has two plurals.

Drills

1. I am a third-year student. ana ṭaalib fi sana taalta. انا طالب في سنة  
ثالثة.

Substitute:

first  
second  
third  
fourth  
fifth  
sixth

2. This is the tenth house. haada l-beet al-9aaṣir. هادا البيت العاشر.

Substitute:

fourth  
sixth  
third  
second  
eighth  
first  
fifth  
seventh  
tenth  
eleventh  
twentieth

3. This is the fourth year. haadi raabi9 sana. هادي رابع سنة.

Substitute:

fifth  
second  
tenth  
eleventh  
sixth  
eighth  
third

4. In the College of  
Engineering, right?

fi kulliyyat al-handasa,  
muu kida?

في كلية الهندسة،  
موكده؟

Substitute:

Commerce  
Agriculture  
Education  
Sciences  
Medicine  
Arts  
Engineering  
Pharmacy  
Economics

5. I was educated in  
Egypt first.

at9allamt fi ma9ur  
fil-awwal.

اتعلمت في مصر في الاول.

Substitute:

we  
you (m)  
she  
they  
you (f)  
he  
you (p)  
I

6. I finished high school  
there.

kammalt saanawi hinaak.

كملت ثانوي هناك.

Substitute:

the university  
my Bachelor's degree ('the Bachelor's degree')  
intermediate school  
elementary school  
my Master's degree  
my doctorate  
secondary school

7. Both of my children  
are in school.

awlaadi l-itneen  
fil-madrasa.

اولادي الاثنين في المدرسة.

Substitute:

all four  
all six  
all three  
all five  
all seven  
both

8. Given the phrase with a numeral and plural noun, change it to a singular  
noun with an ordinal numeral.

Example: talaata siniin → sana taalta

ثلاثة سنيين ← سنة تالطة

Continue:

talaata ayyaam  
itneen muwa99afiin

ثلاثة ايام  
اثنين موظفين

xamsa maḍaaris  
9aṣara riĵaal  
sitta ṭalaba  
sab9a ṭayyaaraat

خمسة مدارس  
عشرة رجال  
ستة طالبات  
سبعة طيارات

Situations

1.
  - A. When will you (p) travel?
  - B. The plane leaves at night.
  - A. All of your children are going with you, aren't they?
  - B. Yes, all three of my children and my wife, too.
  - A. Is this the first time you (p) go together?
  - B. No, no...maybe the tenth time. We travel together often ('much').
2.
  - A. I finished my education ('the education') in Egypt before I returned here.
  - B. I heard that you are a professor in the university.
  - A. Yes, in the College of Commerce, Riyadh University.
  - B. Do you teach in the daytime only?
  - A. Daytime and nighttime both.
3.
  - A. Is your brother a student now?
  - B. Yes, he's still in intermediate school. He'll finish next year, if God wills.
  - A. And then go to secondary school?
  - B. Yes, after the exams.

Cultural Notes

1. In Saudi Arabia (and in most of the Arab countries), the elementary level of education is six years, intermediate is three years, and secondary is three years. General examinations are given for one week at the end of each year, which must be passed with a certain percentage score for the student to continue to the next year. National (government-controlled) examinations are usually held at the end of each of the three levels.

LESSON 29

Dialogue

doctor	duktoor	دكتور
A. I'd like to introduce you to Dr. Said.	aHubb a9arrifak 9ala d-duktoor sa9iid.	احب اعرفك على الدكتور سعيد.
tidarris	you (m) teach	تدرس
B. I'm honored. Where do you teach?	at9arraft. feen Ha9ratak tidarris?	انشرفت فين حضرتك تدرس؟
department	gism	قسم
history	taariix	تاريخ
A. In the College of Arts, History Department.	fi kulliyat al-aadaab, gism at-taariix.	في كلية الآداب، قسم التاريخ.
B. From where did you get your doctorate?	axadt ad-dukura min feen?	اخذت الدكتوراه من فين؟
Beirut	beeruut	بيروت
scholarship	minHa	منحة
A. From Beirut. I had a scholarship.	min beeruut. kaan 9indi minHa.	من بيروت. كان عندي منحة.
I visited	zurt	زرت
Lebanon	libnaan	لبنان
time, occasion	marra	مرة
B. Beirut! I've visited Lebanon twice.	beeruut! ana zurt libnaan marrateen.	بيروت! انا زرت لبنان مرتين.

Structure Sentences

1. This is the engineer Abdalla.	haada l-muhandis 9abdalla.	هادا المهندس عبد الله
2. Where is the emir's office?	feen maktab al-amiir?	فين مكتب الامير؟
3. I teach in the English department	adarris fi gism al-ingiliizi.	ادرس في قسم الانكليزي.
4. The government gives scholarships to Saudi students.	al-Hukuuma ti9ti minaH li9-talaba s-su9uudiyiin.	الحكومة تعطى منح للطلبة السعوديين.
5. The airplane left late.	a9-tayyaara gaamat mit'axxira.	الطيارة قامت متأخرة.

Grammatical Notes

1. The most common personal titles in Saudi Arabia are:

al-muhandis	المهندس	engineer (this may refer to anyone with a degree in the sciences--architect, economist, etc.)
ad-duktoor	الدكتور	Doctor
al-ustaaz	الاستاذ	Professor (this is also used as a title of respect)
al-waziir	الوزير	Minister
aš-šeex	الشيخ	Sheikh
as-safiir	السفير	Ambassador
al-amiir, -a	الأمير	Emir, Prince; Princess
al-malik, -a	الملك	King; Queen
al-axx	الاخ	brother (this is used in referring to a close friend)
al-uxt	الاخت	sister (this is used for a friend or as a title of respect)

Note that the titles are used with the definite article before the name:

haada l-axx maHmuud. This is (my friend) Mahmoud.  
 haada d-duktoor sa9iid. This is Dr. Said.

2. "Colleges" in universitites are sub-divided into departments according to subject, for example:

taariix	history	تاريخ
jughraafya	geography	جغرافيا
riyaaqa	mathematics	رياضيات
kiimya	chemistry	كيمياء
9ulum siyaasiyya	political science	علوم سياسية
diraasaat aš-šarq	Middle Eastern studies	دراسات الشرق الاوسط
al-awsaṭ		

3. /a9ṭa, yi9ṭi/, 'to give', is a classicized word which is used almost as frequently as /adda, yiddi/. It is more common in formal situations. It is usually used with direct objects, although /l-/, 'to', is sometimes heard.

Perfect

Imperfect

huwwa a9ṭa	yi9ṭi	يعطي	اعطى
hiyya a9ṭat	ti9ṭi	تعطي	اعطت
humma a9ṭu	yi9ṭu	يعطوا	اعطوا
inta a9ṭeet	ti9ṭi	تعصي	اعطيت
inti a9ṭeeti	ti9ṭi	تعطين	اعطين
intu a9ṭeetu	ti9ṭu	تعطوا	اعطيتوا
ana a9ṭeet	a9ṭi	اعطي	اعطيت
iHna a9ṭeena	ni9ṭi	نعطي	اعطينا

4. The verb /kaan, yikuun/ can be used with modal words to express past and future tense:

9indi minHa.	I have a scholarship.
kaan 9indi minHa.	I had a scholarship.
raH-yikuun 9indi minHa.	I will have a scholarship.

laazim yiruuH.	He must go.
kaan laazim yiruuH.	He had to go. He should have gone.

mumkin nihi ba9deen. We can come later.  
 kaan mumkin nihi We could have come later.  
 ba9deen,

Vocabulary Notes

minHa, minaH  
 9aaşima, 9awaaşim  
 marra, -aat  
 gism, agsaam

scholarship  
 capital  
 time, occasion  
 department

منحة منح  
 عاصمة عواصم  
 مرة -ات  
 قسم اقسام

a9ta, yi9ti  
 darras, yidarris  
 zaar, yizuur (zurt)  
 gaam, yiguum (gumt)

give  
 teach  
 visit  
 stand up, get up, ascend

اعطى يعطي  
 درّس يدرّس  
 زار يزور (زرت)  
 قام يقوم (قامت)

muhandis, -iin  
 duktoor, dakaatra  
 šeex, šuyuux  
 safiir, sufara  
 amiir, umara  
 amiira, -aat  
 malik, muluuk  
 malika, -aat

engineer  
 doctor  
 sheikh  
 ambassador  
 prince  
 princess  
 king  
 queen

مهندس س-ين  
 دكتور دكاترة  
 شيخ شيوخ  
 سفير سفراء  
 امير امراء  
 اميرة -ات  
 ملك ملوك  
 ملكة -ات

Arab State

Nationality Adjective

Saudi Arabia  
 Yemen  
 The Emirates  
 Oman  
 Qatar  
 Bahrein  
 Kuwait  
 Lebanon  
 Syria  
 Jordan  
 Iraq  
 Morocco  
 Algeria  
 Tunisia  
 Libya  
 Egypt  
 Sudan  
 Palestine

as-su9uudiyya  
 al-yaman  
 al-imaaraat  
 9umaan  
 qaṭar  
 al-baHreen  
 al-kuweet  
 libnaan  
 suuriya  
 al-urdun  
 al-9iraaq  
 al-maghrrib  
 al-jazaayir  
 tuunis  
 liibya  
 maşur  
 as-suudaan  
 falasṭiin

su9uudi  
 yamaani  
 ---  
 9umaani  
 qaṭari  
 baHreeni  
 kuweeti  
 libnaani  
 suuri  
 urduni  
 9iraaqi  
 maghribi  
 jazaayiri  
 tuunisi  
 liibi  
 maşri  
 suudaani  
 falasṭiini

سعودي  
 يمني  
 ---  
 عماني  
 قطري  
 بحريني  
 كويتي  
 لبناني  
 سوري  
 اردني  
 عراقي  
 مغربي  
 جزائري  
 تونسي  
 ليبي  
 مصري  
 سوداني  
 فلسطيني

السعودية  
 اليمن  
 الإمارات  
 عمان  
 قطر  
 البحرين  
 الكويت  
 لبنان  
 سوريا  
 الاردن  
 العراق  
 المغرب  
 الجزائر  
 تونس  
 ليبيا  
 مصر  
 السودان  
 فلسطين

Capital City

Riyadh  
 Sanaa  
 Abu Dhabi  
 Muscat  
 Doha  
 Manama  
 Kuwait City  
 Beirut  
 Damascus  
 Amman  
 Baghdad  
 Rabat  
 Algiers

ar-riyaad  
 şan9a  
 abuu ʒabi  
 maşqaṭ  
 ad-dooHa  
 al-manaama  
 al-kuweet  
 beeruut  
 dimişq  
 9ammaan  
 baghdaad  
 ar-rabaat  
 al-jazaayir

الرياض  
 صنعاء  
 أبو ظبي  
 مسقط  
 الدوحة  
 المنامة  
 الكويت  
 بيروت  
 دمشق  
 عمان  
 بغداد  
 الرباط  
 الجزائر

Tunis	tuunis
Tripoli	ṭarabluṣ
Cairo	al-qaahira
Khartoum	al-xarṭuum
Jerusalem	al-guds

تونس  
طرابلس  
القاهرة  
الخرطوم  
القدس

Drills

1. I'd like to introduce  
you to Dr. Said.

aḤubb a9arrifak 9ala  
d-duktoor sa9iid.

احب اعرفك على الدكتور  
سعيد

Substitute:

the prince  
"brother" Ahmad  
the minister  
Professor Abdalla  
"engineer" Mahmoud  
the ambassador  
the king  
the princess  
"sister" Miryam  
the queen  
Dr. Said  
Sheikh Muhammad

2. I teach in the History  
Department.

adarris fi gism at-taariix.

ادرس في قسم التاريخ

Substitute:

the Mathematics Department  
the Chemistry Department  
the Political Science Department  
the Geography Department  
the Middle East Studies Department

3. Beirut! I've visited  
Lebanon twice.

beeruut! ana zurt libnaan  
maḤateen.

بيروت! انا زرت لبنان  
مرتين

Substitute:

Amman - Jordan  
Sanaa - Yemen  
Baghdad - Iraq  
Abu Dhabi - The Emirates  
Damascus - Syria  
Cairo - Egypt  
Tunis - Tunisia  
Tripoli - Libya  
Muscat - Oman  
Manama - Bahrein  
Algiers - Algeria  
Khartoum - Sudan  
Doha - Qatar  
Kuwait City - Kuwait  
Rabat - Morocco  
Riyadh - Saudi Arabia  
Beirut - Lebanon



4. Where is the Emir's office?

feen maktab al-amiir?

فين مكتب الامير؟

Substitute:

the king  
the Minister of Finance  
the Minister of Education  
the Minister of Defense  
the ambassador  
the professor  
the engineer  
the doctor  
the teacher  
the manager  
Mr. Smith  
the supervisor

5. She will get up now.  
(i.e., in order to leave)

Ha-tiguum daHHiin.

حقوقم د حين

Substitute:

will leave  
he  
visit his father  
I  
drive the car  
stand up  
we  
visit our family  
learn the new lesson  
she  
get up

6. I visited him yesterday. zurtu ams.

زرت امس

Substitute:

I visited them  
she visited them  
she saw them  
we  
drove the car twice  
got up at 4:30  
saw all of them  
he  
drove to the house

7. He gave me money.

a9taani fuluus.

اعطاني فلوس

Substitute:

she gave me  
the letter  
they gave him  
they gave us  
the order  
I gave you (m)  
I gave the manager

the note  
we gave somebody  
the scholarship

(Repeat the drill, changing it to future tense)

8. Given the name of the country, use a sentence with the nationality adjective.

Example: huwwa min as-suudaan. → huwwa suudaani. هو من السودان ← هو سوداني

Continue:

huwwa min al-yaman.  
gaṭar.  
libnaan  
al-9iraaq  
tuunis  
al-maghrib  
al-kuweet  
suuriya  
al-baHreen  
liibya  
maṣur  
9umaan  
al-urdun  
as-su9uudiyya  
falasṭiin  
al-jazaayir  
as-suudaan

هو من اليمن  
قطر  
لبنان  
العراق  
تونس  
المغرب  
الكويت  
سوريا  
البحرين  
ليبيا  
مصر  
عمان  
الأردن  
السعودية  
فلسطين  
الجزائر  
السودان

Situations

1.
  - A. I'm leaving for Egypt tomorrow.
  - B. Really, why?
  - A. I have a scholarship to study history at Cairo University.
  - B. Congratulations! Will you stay long? ('much')
  - A. Until I finish my Master's degree, if God wills.
  - B. When you return, will you teach in the university?
  - A. Yes, I'll be a professor.
2.
  - A. Yesterday I met the sheikh.
  - B. What did you (p) discuss?
  - A. We discussed education and health. ('the education and the health')
  - B. Good, I want to visit him soon, too.
  - A. He asked me to visit him next month at the Emir's house.  
(/9ind al-amiir/)
  - B. Maybe you and the ambassador can both go.
3.
  - A. There are many Eguptian teachers and professors in Saudi Arabia, aren't there?
  - B. Oh yes, in elementary, intermediate, and secondary schools, and in the university, too.
  - A. And in girls' education?
  - B. In girls' education [even] more! Women teachers are Egyptian and Palestinian.
  - A. But Saudi women are now studying education.
  - B. Yes, in the Girls' College here there is a Department of Education.

LESSON 30

Review last nine dialogues.

Supplementary Drills

1. I don't know what he bought.      ma adri eeš ištara.      ما ادري ايشر اشترى.

Substitute:

what he saw  
 where the glass is  
 if he agrees or not ('is agreeing or no')  
 why they are in a hurry  
 where the driver is  
 [whether] he wants coffee or tea  
 when he met the minister  
 the telephone number  
 who is the manager's assistant  
 how many employees are in the company  
 why nobody answers  
 who she went with  
 what time the plane left ('ascended')  
 how old his daughter is  
 where he was educated  
 how many colleges are in the university  
 what the capital of Iraq is  
 which department he teaches in  
 the prince's name

2. When will you (m) go to the doctor?      mita Ha-tiruuH lid-duktoor?      ما حنروح للدكتور؟

Substitute:

have ('drink') tea at my house?  
 be able to return?  
 speak to the driver?  
 finish your education?  
 tell me about the agreement?  
 be free?  
 will someone tell him?  
 will we go together?  
 will we see each other?  
 will your son enter kindergarten?  
 will you (m) visit me?

3. In Saudi Arabia there are many cars.      fis-su9uudiyya fii sayyaaraat katiir.      في السعودية فيه سيارات كثير.

Substitute:

buildings  
 offices  
 companies  
 foreigners  
 Americans  
 embassies  
 airplanes  
 streets  
 ministers

princes  
projects  
plans  
employees  
teachers  
professors  
students  
universities  
colleges  
doctors  
schools  
families  
cities  
airports  
Egyptians  
Arabs  
banks

### Narratives

1. I live in the big house near the post office. I work as the manager of an American company which has been in Saudi Arabia three years. Every day I drive my car to the office about 8:30. My wife is a teacher and we have two children, a boy and a girl. We like Arabia and [have] traveled to Yemen, Lebanon, and also Jordan. Next year we will go to Egypt, we hope. The children are in the American school, where one (m) is in the fifth grade and one (f) is in the second grade. They speak a little Arabic because they study it in school two hours every week. I met their teacher last week, and she said that they are studying well and learning quickly. We are all happy here and have many friends, both Arab and American.

2. When I entered the university at first I studied history. Later I studied political science for the M.A., and then I worked for the government. I like to travel, especially in the Middle East, and I want to learn Arabic in order to talk to the people whom I meet.

3. Please come to my house soon; my wife wants to meet your wife, and bring the children, of course. There are many things we could talk about; I want to learn about Saudi Arabia--the people, the history, the geography, the commerce. Call me on the telephone after 9:00 a.m.--you know my office phone, don't you? And I'll give you my home telephone number too. Sorry, do you have a piece of paper and a pen? Thanks. If God wills, we'll hear from you (p) soon.

4. Excuse me, what time is it? Oh, I'm late and I have an appointment at the ministry! Can I find a taxi here? Across from that big building? Thanks.

5. Take me to the Ministry of Defense, please. I'm in a hurry, but drive carefully. Where are you from? Sudan, really? How long have you been here in Arabia? Ten years! That's a long time! Are you happy here? Thank God. Yes, I speak Arabic because I studied it for ten months. I like to speak Arabic; I meet nice people. Turn left here--here is fine. How much? Take it (/atfaḍḍal/). Goodby.

LESSON 31

Dialogue

(At the airport)

ticket	tazkira	تذكرة
passport	jawaaz as-safar	جواز السفر
A. Ticket and passport, please.	at-tazkira wu jawaaz as-safar min faḍlak.	التذكرة وجواز السفر، من فضلك.
B. Right here.	atfaḍḍal.	اتفضل
visa	ta'ṣiira	تأشيرة
entry	duxuul	دخول
A. Give them to me. Do you have an entry visa?	addiinihumma. 9indak ta'ṣiirat duxuul?	ادينيهم. عندك تأشيرة دخول؟
B. Yes.	iiwa.	ايوه.
A. How many bags?	kam ṣanṭa?	كم شنطة؟
red (p)	Humur	حمر
B. Those three red suitcases.	at-talaata ṣunaṭ al-Humur hadool.	الثلاثة شنط الحمر هدول.
weight	wazn	وزن
excess	ziyaada	زيادة
tax	ḡariiba	ضريبة
A. You must pay 25 riyals for excess weight, plus the airport tax.	laazim tidfa9 xamsa wu 9iṣriin riyaal wazn ziyaada, zaayid ḡariibat al-maṭaar.	لازم تدفع خمسة وعشرين ريال وزن زيادة زائد ضريبة المطار.

Structure Sentences

1. Where is passport control?	feen al-jawaazaat?	فين الجوازات؟
2. You must will out this card.	laazim timalli haada l-kart.	لازم تطلي هادا الكرت
3. Where is the waiting room (lobby)?	feen ghurfat al-intiṣaar?	فين غرفة الانتظار؟
4. Where is the rest room?	feen al-Hammaam?	فين الحمام؟
5. I showed it (m) to her?	warreetahahuwa.	وريتهاهو.
6. I like the blue car.	aHubb as-sayyaara z-zarga.	احب السيارة الزرقا.

7. I made a reservation. 9amalt Hajz. عملت حجز  
 8. Is this your luggage? haada 9afšak? هادا عفشك؟

Grammatical Notes

1. /jawaaz as-safar/, 'the passport', literally means 'the travel permit'. /jawaaz safar/ means 'a passport' (formed by making the second noun indefinite). The borrowed word /basboor, basboorŕaat/ is also used.

2. Some verbs take both a direct object and an indirect object. If these are both pronouns, they may both be suffixed to the verb.

(1) The indirect object is expressed before the direct object.

(2) The indirect object may be expressed as if it were direct, i.e., without /l-/.

(3) Only /huwwa/, /hiyya/, and /humma/ are used as the second object in these constructions.

addiinihuwwa.*	Give it to me. ('Give [to] me it (m).')
addiilihuwwa.*	Give it to me. ('Give to me it (m).')
addiiluhuwwa.	Give it to him. ('Give to him it (m).')
warreetahahuwwa.	I showed it (m) to her. ('I showed [to] her it (m).')
jaablihumma.	He brought them to me. ('He brought to me them.')
laazim tijiiblahahiyya.	You must bring it (f) to her.

\*Both are correct, although the first form is more used.

With other pronouns, this construction is avoided by expressing one of the objects with a noun.

3. While /šanŕa, šunaŕ/ refers to briefcases or suitcases, the word /9afš/ is usually used to refer to 'luggage' as a whole.

4. Colors must agree with the noun in gender and number. Most colors follow a predictable vowel pattern; some names are of foreign origin and do not change:

<u>Masculine</u>		<u>Feminine</u>		<u>Plural</u>		
aHmar	احمر	Hamra	حمراء	Humur	حمر	red
azrag	ازرق	zarga	زرقات	zurg	زرق	blue
axŕar	اخضر	xaŕra	خضراء	xuŕur	خضر	green
ašfar	اصفر	šafra	صفراء	šufur	صفر	yellow
aswad	اسود	sooda	سوداء	suud	سود	black
abyaŕ	ابيض	beeŕa	بيضا	beeŕ	بيض	white
banafsaji		بنفسجي				purple
burtukaani		برتقالي				orange
bunni		بنى				brown
rumaadi		رمادي				gray

Examples:

at-talaata šunaŕ al-Humur the three red suitcases  
 (or: at-talaata šunaŕ al-Hamra)

al-waraga l-beeŕa the white piece of paper  
 al-beet al-abyaŕ the white house  
 al-kitaab al-ašfar the yellow book  
 as-sayyaara l-rumaadi the gray car  
 9ajabni l-axŕar. I liked the green [one].

Vocabulary Notes

jawaaz, -aat (safar)  
tazkira, tazaakir  
ta'siira, -aat  
qariiba, qaraayib  
kart, kuruut

passport  
ticket  
visa  
tax  
card

جواز سفر - ات  
تذكرة - ات  
تأشيرة - ات  
ضريبة ضرائب  
كرت كروت

malla, yimalli (malleet)  
warra, ywarri (warreet)

fill  
show

ملو يملو (مليت)  
درر يدرر (دريت)

Drills

1: Give them [to] me.

addiinihumma.

اد بنهم

Continue:

to him  
to her  
to us  
Give it (m)  
to me  
to him  
Give it (f)  
to them  
to me

2. Can you show it (m)  
to me?

mumkin tiwarriinihuwwa?

ممکن تورينيهو؟

Continue:

to us  
to them  
give it (m)  
to her  
pay it (m)  
to him  
to me  
but it (f)  
for them  
for us  
sell them  
for him  
for her  
bring it (m)  
for me  
for him  
fill it (m) out  
for them  
for us

3. Those three red suitcases. at-talaata sunaṭ  
al-Humur hadool.

الثلاثة شنط الحمر هدول

Continue:

blue  
yellow  
gray  
black  
white  
purple  
green  
brown  
red

4. I like the blue car. aHubb as-sayyaara z-zarga. احب السيارة الزرقاء.

Continue:

green  
black  
red  
yellow  
orange  
gray  
brown  
white

5. Express the sentence in Arabic, first with a direct object and indirect object, then substitute the object pronouns.

Example: Give the book to Ahmad. → Give it to him.

addi l-kitaab l-aHmad. → addiiluhuwwa. ادر الكتاب لاحمد ← ادبلوهو.

Continue:

Give the suitcase to Miriam.  
Fill out the card for the official ('employee').  
Make the reservation for him.  
Read the lesson to the students.  
Bring the coffee to the lady.  
Take the books to the professor.  
Carry the suitcase for the girl.  
Do the homework for me.  
Leave [behind] the message for him.  
Sell the car for me.

Situations

1.
  - A. Where do I take my ticket?
  - B. [Over] there, at the airline office (/maktab at-ṭayaraan/).
  - A. Can I leave my suitcase here?
  - B. Are these all yours?
  - A. No, only the black ones.
  - B. Leave them for me. I'll carry them.
2.
  - A. Have you seen my friend (m)?
  - B. Yes, he's waiting for you in the waiting room.
  - A. Can you show it to me?
  - B. Of course. Go straight, then turn right.
  - A. Is there a restroom there?
  - B. Yes, of course.
3.
  - A. What are you (f) going to buy?
  - B. Maybe I'll buy this red purse. Do you (m) like it?
  - A. Yes, but I like the white one better. It's bigger.
  - B. But more expensive too. See the green one? Can you (m) get it for me?
  - A. Here (/atfaḍḍali/). This is the prettiest [one]. Buy it.



LESSON 32

Dialogue

(At a gasoline station)

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| A. Fill it (f) up.   | malliiha.   | مليتها.                                   |
| regular, ordinary  | 9aadi   | عادي.                                     |
| excellent  | mumtaaz   | ممتاز                                     |
| B. Regular or super?   | 9aadi walla mumtaaz?  | عادي ولا ممتاز؟                           |
| clean (m)  | naḡḡif  | نظيف                                      |
| glass  | guzaaz  | قزاز                                      |
| oil  | zeet  | زيت                                       |
| A. Regular. Clean the glass and check ('see') the oil too, please. | 9aadi. naḡḡif al-guzaaz wu ḡuuf az-zeet kamaan, min faḡlak. | عادي. نظف القزاز وشوف الزيت كمان من فضلك. |
| forbidden  | mamnuu9   | منوع                                      |
| exit   | xuruuj  | خروج                                      |
| B. OK. Sorry, no exit ('exiting is forbidden') from here.          | ṭayyib. aasif, mamnuu9 al-xuruuj min hina.                  | طيب. آسف، ممنوع الخروج من هنا.            |
| I take out   | axarrij   | أخرج                                      |
| A. From where can I take the car out?                              | min feen axarrij as-sayyaara?                               | من فين أخرج السيارة؟                      |
| entrance   | madxal  | مدخل                                      |
| B. From the entrance.  | min al-madxal.  | من المدخل.                                |

Structure Sentences

- |                               |                                 |                       |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. I must find a gas station. | laazim alaagi maHaṭṭat banziin. | لازم الاقي محطة بنزين |
| 2. No entry.                  | mamnuu9 ad-duxuul.              | ممنوع الدخول.         |
| 3. No standing.               | mamnuu9 al-wuguuf.              | ممنوع الوقوف          |
| 4. The car is very clean.     | as-sayyaara marra naḡiifa.      | السيارة مرة نظيفة.    |
| 5. Where is the bus station?  | feen mawgif al-utubiis?         | فيين موقف الانوبيس؟   |

Grammatical Notes

1. /naḡḡaf/, 'to clean', and /daxxal/, 'to bring', are examples of "causative" verbs in Arabic. These verbs can be recognized by the doubled consonants in the middle, and always follow the pattern:

<u>Perfect</u>	<u>Imperfect</u>
$C_1aC_2C_2aC_3$	$yiC_1aC_2C_2iC_3$
naḍḍaf daxxal	yinaḍḍif yidaxxil

The meaning of these verbs is 'to cause to do' or 'to cause to be'. /naḍḍaf/ is related to /naḍiif/, 'to clean', and literally means 'to cause to be clean'. /daxxal/ is related to /daxal/, 'to enter', and literally means 'to cause to enter'.

The following causative verbs are related to words introduced so far:

<u>Verb</u>		<u>Related to:</u>	
daxxal	bring in	daxal	دَخَلَ
waṣṣal	take to a destination	waṣal	وَصَلَ
fahham	explain, help to understand	fihim	فَهَّم
ṣayyal	load	ṣaal	صَالَى
xarraḡ	expel	xaraḡ	خَرَجَ
wagḡaf	stop, make stop	wigif	وَقَفَ
nazzal	take down	nazal	نَزَلَ
ṭalla9	carry up	ṭili9	طَلَى
xallaṣ	finish	xalaṣ	خَلَصَ
9arraf	inform	9irif	عَرَّفَ
raḡḡa9	return (something)	riji9	رَجَعَ
naḍḍaf	clean	naḍiif	نَضَّفَ
darras	teach	daras	دَرَسَ

2. /aasif/ (/aasfa, aasfiin/) is another way to say 'sorry'. It is used as often as /mit'assif/.

3. /xuruuj/ is an example of a "verbal noun". Verbal nouns are formed from the verb, and are usually translated into English as a gerund, i.e., a verb form ending in "-ing" which is used as a noun.

mamnuu9 al-xuruuj. Departure is forbidden.  
Going out is forbidden.

Many verbal nouns follow a predictable vowel pattern, but there are variations:

duxuul	entry	دَخُول
xuruuj	exit, departure	خُرُوج
wuguuf	standing	وُقُوف
juluus	sitting	جُلُوس
wuṣuul	arriving, arrival	وُصُول
kalaam	speaking	كَلَام
kitaaba	writing	كِتَابَة
ṣurb	drinking	شُرْب
noom	sleeping	نَوْم

4. /madxal/ is an example of a "noun of place". Nouns of place are formed by using /ma-/ as a prefix to a verbal root. The pattern is usually:

$maC_1C_2aC_3$  plural:  $maC_1aaC_2iC_3$

A noun of place may be literally translated as 'a place of doing'.

BASIC COURSE

Not all verbs have nouns of place. Some of the more common ones are:

Noun of Place

Related to:

madxal, madaaxil mawgif, mawaagif	entrance stop, stand (bus, taxi)	daxal wigif	مدخل - مداخل موقف - مواقف
maktab, makaatib maktaba, -aat	office library, bookstore	katab katab	مكتبه - مكاتب مكتبة - ات
madrasa, madaaris manzil, manaazil majlis, majaalis	school house* "majlis" (the king's public session)	daras nazal jalas	مدرسة - مدارس منزل - منازل مجلس - مجالس
masjid, masaajid maṭaar, -aat maḤaṭṭa, -aat makaan, amaakin	mosque airport station place	sajad ('bow down') ṭayyaara Ḥaṭṭ kaan	مسجد - مساجد مطار - ات محطة - ات مكان - اماكن

\*/manzil/ is more classicized than /beet/.

Vocabulary Notes

mumtaaz, -a, -iin ḡaadi, -iyya, -yiin naḡiif, -a, nuḡaaf mamnuuḡ, -a, -iin	excellent regular, ordinary clean forbidden, prevented	ممتاز - ين عادي - بين نظيف - نظاف منوع - ين
utubiis, -aat	bus	اتوبيس - ات

Drills

1. Given a word, form the causative verb related to it.

Example: naḡiif → naḡḡaf

نظف ← نظف

Continue:

waṣal  
nazal  
xaraj  
xalaṣ  
daxal  
ṣaal  
wigif  
daras  
ḡirif

وصل  
نزل  
خرج  
خلص  
دخل  
شال  
وقف  
درس  
عرف

2. You (m) must clean  
the glasses.

laazim tinagḡif al-guzaaz.

لازم تنظف القزاز

Substitute:

you (f)  
you (p)  
we  
finish early  
he  
I  
the employees  
she

explain it to him (use /fahham/)  
 I  
 his sister  
 the teachers  
 teach well  
 he  
 they  
 take in the suitcases  
 he  
 the men  
 we  
 take her there (use /waṣṣal/)  
 I  
 Ahmad

3. Clean (m) the glass. naḍḍif al-guzaaz.

نظف القزاز.

Substitute:

clean (f)  
 clean (p)  
 take (m) upstairs  
 the luggage  
 take out (f)  
 take out (m)  
 have him carry  
 have her carry  
 take down (m)  
 take down (p)  
 the books  
 clean (m)  
 the station  
 the glass

4. Given the verb, form the verbal noun:

xaraj  
 daxal  
 jalas  
 katab  
 atkallam  
 wasal  
 naam  
 širib  
 wigif

خرج  
 دخل  
 جلس  
 كتب  
 تكلم  
 وصل  
 نام  
 شرب  
 وقف

5. No exit here. mamnuu9 al-xuruuj hina.

منوع الخروج هنا.

Substitute:

no entry  
 no standing  
 no talking  
 no drinking  
 no sitting  
 no sleeping  
 no writing

6. Given a word, form the noun of place related to it:

daras  
 katab (two nouns)  
 ṭayyaara

درس  
 كتب  
 طائرة

wigif  
daxal  
nazal  
kaan  
jalas

وقف  
دخل  
نزل  
كان  
جلس

7. He went to the airport. raah al-maṭaar.

راح المطار.

Substitute:

the house  
the library  
the entrance of the building  
the new office  
many places  
his son's school  
the bus station  
the gas station  
the bus stop  
the airport

8. Where is the bus stop? feen mawgif al-utubiis?

فين موقف الاتوبيس؟

Substitute:

the entrance of the station  
the airline office  
the university library  
the passport office (/jawaazaat/)  
the rest room  
the blue card  
the waiting room  
the visa department  
the ticket office  
the bus stop

### Situations

1.
  - A. Fill it up, please.
  - B. OK. Super or regular?
  - A. Super. How much?
  - B. Eight riyals. [Shall] I clean the glass?
  - A. Please. And check the oil, too.
  - B. Any service.
2.
  - A. Where is the bus stop?
  - B. At the beginning of the next street.
  - A. When does the bus come?
  - B. Every half hour. Perhaps I can take you in my car. Where are you going?
  - A. To the university library. I'm a student in the Commerce Department.
  - B. Pleased to meet you.
3.
  - A. Sorry, no sitting here.
  - B. Why [not]?
  - A. This is the entrance of the lobby. Go ahead inside.
  - B. Thanks. Is there a rest room here?
  - A. Turn right at the desk, then straight ahead.
  - B. Thanks very much.

## LESSON 33

Dialogue

souk (bazaar market)	suug	سوق
I pay	adfa9	ادفع
bill	Hisaab	حساب
shop	dukkaan	دكان
fabric	gumaaṣ	قماش
A. I want to go to the souk. I have to pay a bill at the fabric shop.	abgha aruuH as-suug. laazim adfa9 Hisaab fi dukkaan al-gumaaṣ.	ارغبى اروح السوق. لازم ادفع حساب في دكان القماش.
I look for	adawwir (9ala)	ادور (على)
radio	raadyu	راديو
B. I'll go with you, in order to look for a radio.	H-aruuH ma9aak 9aṣaan adawwir 9ala raadyu.	حاروج معاك عشان ادور على راديو.
middle	wasat	وسط
radios	rawaadi	روادي
televisions	tilifizyoonaat	تلفزيونات
recorders	musajjilaat	مسجلات
A. I know a good shop in the middle of the souk. They sell radios, televisions, and recorders.	a9rif dukkaan kwayyis fi wasat as-suug. yibii9u rawaadi wu tilifizyoonaat wu musajjilaat.	اعرف دكان كويس في وسط السوق. بيعوا رادي و تلفزيونات ومسجلات.
I hope	9asa	عسى
everywhere	kull makaan	كل مكان
B. I hope there will be one. I've looked everywhere.	9asa yikuun fii waaHid. ana dawwart fi kull makaan.	عسى يكون فيه واحد. انا دورت في كل مكان.
our Lord	rabbana	ربنا
he gives success	yiwaffig	يوفق
A. Good luck. ('May our Lord give you success')	rabbana yiwaffig.	ربنا يوفق.
B. Thanks. ('If God wills')	in ṣaa' allaah.	ان شاء الله.

Structure Sentences

1. There were many people there.	kaan fii naas katiir hinaak.	كان فيه ناس كثير هناك.
2. There wasn't time.	ma kaan fii wagt.	ما كان فيه وقت.
3. I ordered a radio from him.	ṭalabt raadyu min 9indu.	طلبت راديو من عنده.
4. I asked for help from him.	ṭalabt minnu musaa9ada.	طلبت منه مساعدة.
5. The account is balanced.	al-Hisaab maḡbuuṭ.	الحساب مطبوط.
6. This is the best store.	haada aHsan maHall.	هادا احسن محل.
7. His father is a merchant in the old souk.	abuu taajir fis-suug al-gadiima.	ابوه تاجر في السوق القديمة.

Grammatical Notes

1. Foreign words like /tilifoon/ and /tilifizyoon/ usually take the /-aat/ plural. When in doubt, guess this plural first.

2. /9asa/ may be translated 'I hope', 'it is hoped', 'possibly'. It may be used with a verb or with a pronoun suffix:

9asaa	it is hoped that he	عسى
9asaaha	it is hoped that she	عساها
9asaahum	it is hoped that they	عساهم
9asaak	it is hoped that you (m)	عساك
9asaaki	it is hoped that you (f)	عساك
9asaakum	it is hoped that you (p)	عساكم
9asaani	it is hoped that I	عساني
9asaana	it is hoped that we	عسانا
9asa yikuun fii waaHid.	I hope there will be one.	
9asaahum yiktubuulana.	I hope they write to us.	

3. /fii/ and /ma fii/, 'there is (not)', 'there are (not)', may be used with /kaan/:

kaan fii naas katiir hinaak.	There were many people there.
9asa yikuun fii waaHid.	I hope there will be one.
ma kaan fii wagt.	There wasn't time.
ma Ha-yikuun fii wagt.	There will not be time.

4. /ṭalab/ may mean 'to order' (in the sense of 'to place an order') or 'to ask for, request' (cf. Structure Sentences 3 and 4). Note the difference between /ṭalab/, 'to ask for (a thing)' and /sa'al/, 'to ask (information, a question)'.

5. /dukkaan/ generally refers to a small shop, while /maHall/ is used for a larger store. However, the terms are often used interchangeably.

Vocabulary Notes

dafa9, yidfa9  
dawwar, yidawwir (9ala)  
ṭalab, yuṭlub

pay  
look for  
ask for, request, order

رفع يدفع  
رغب يدفع (على)  
طلب يطلب

raadyu, rawaadi  
tilifizyoon, -aat  
musajjil, -aat  
waqt, awgaat  
taajir, tujjaar  
suug, aswaag\*  
dukkaan, dakaakiin  
maHall, -aat

radio  
television  
recorder  
time  
merchant  
souk, market  
shop  
store

راديو رادي  
تلفزيون -ات  
مسجل -ات  
وقت اوقات  
تاجر تجار  
سوق اسواق  
دكان دكاكين  
محل -ات

mazbuuṭ, -a, -iin

accurate, correct

مضبوط -ين

\*This word is feminine.

Drills

1. I want to go to the souk.

abgha aruuH as-suug.

ابغى اروح السوق.

Substitute:

the store  
the shop  
the gas station  
the elementary school  
the radio store ('radios store')  
the souk

2. I have to pay a bill at the fabric shop.

laazim adfa9 Hisaab fi dukkaan al-gumaaṣ.

لازم ارفع حساب في لاجر كان القماش.

Substitute:

humma  
iHna  
hiyya  
huwwa  
inta  
ana  
inti

هم  
احنا  
هي  
هو  
انت  
انا  
انت

3. I know a good shop in the middle of the souk.

a9rif dukkaan kwayyis fi wasaṭ as-suug.

اعرف دكان كويس في وسط السوق.

Substitute:

in the beginning of the souk  
at the end of the souk  
in the old souk  
in the new souk  
in the middle of the souk

4. I hope there will be one.

9asa yikuun fii waaHid.

عسى يكون فيه واحد.

Substitute:

there will be many



there will be time  
 we will arrive early  
 he will buy a television  
 we will finish the work soon  
 I can order a car

5. I've looked everywhere. ana dawwart fi kull makaan.

انا رويت في كل مكان

Substitute:

we  
 she  
 in every store  
 they  
 you (f)  
 in every bookstore  
 he  
 I

Situations

1.
  - A. Excuse me, do you sell recorders?
  - B. Yes, of course. Our recorders are the best and the cheapest.
  - A. I don't have much time. Can you show me a small one?
  - B. This one is Japanese, lightweight and excellent.
  - A. I like it. How much?
  - B. Only 300 riyals. (After the purchase): Congratulations.
  - A. Thanks.
2.
  - A. How much is our account now?
  - B. You owe me 15 riyals.
  - A. Here you are.
  - B. Thank you. Now the account is balanced. Do you want anything else?
  - A. No, thanks. Some other time, if God wills.
3.
  - A. Did you visit your sister in Riyadh?
  - B. No, there wasn't time. I was there only one day.
  - A. Why did you go?
  - B. One of my friends opened a small shop and he asked me to help ('asked from me help').
  - A. Where is the shop?
  - B. In the middle of the souk. He sells fabrics, for both men and women.
  - A. Good luck [to him].
  - B. Thanks.

Cultural Notes

1. The "souk" is the old marketplace found in virtually every city and town in the Middle East. It usually consists of many small shops arranged along narrow lanes, all of which display a wide variety of goods. Sometimes large souks have "quarters" where merchants specialize in one type of merchandise. It is a crowded, busy area, the scene of bargaining and socializing, and a favorite place for bargain-hunters.

Sometimes the word /suug/ is used to mean 'downtown'. The sentence 'I'm going to the souk' may just mean 'I'm going shopping'.

LESSON 34

Dialogue

weather	jaww	جو
hot	Harr	حر
A. The weather here is very hot!	al-jaww hina marra Harr!	الجو هنا مرة حرا!
you (m) get used to	tit9awwid (9ala)	تتعود (على)
B. Yes, but you (m) get used to it.	iiwa, laakin tit9awwid 9alee.	ايوه لकिन تتعود عليه .
like, similar to	zayy	زي
south	januub	جنوب
west	gharb	غرب
United States	al-wilaayaat al-muttaHida	الولايات المتحدة
A. It's like the southwest United States.	zayy januub gharb al-wilaayaat al-muttaHida.	زي جنوب غرب الولايات المتحدة.
I heard	simi9t	سمعت
like that	kida	كده
cold	bard	برد
B. Yes, I [have] heard that. Not all of America is cold.	iiwa, simi9t kida. amriika mahi kullaha barda.	ايوه سمعت كده . امريكا مهني كلها برده .
of course not	ṭab9an la'	طبعا لا
north	šamaal	شمال
the world	ad-dunya	الدنيا
winter	šita	شتا
A. Of course not. Only in the north is it cold in the winter. ('the world is cold')	ṭab9an la'. bass fiš-šamaal ad-dunya bard fiš-šita.	طبعا لا . بس في الشمال الدنيا برد في الشتا .
I read	giriit	قرئت
B. I [have] read about America's weather.	giriit 9an jaww amriika.	قرئت عن جو امريكا .

Structure Sentences

1. The weather here is cold.	al-jaww hina bard.	الجو هنا برد .
2. Today is windy. ('north [wind]')	al-yoom šamaal.	اليوم شمال .

3. I'm cold.	ana bardaan.	انا بردان
4. I'm hot.	ana Harraan.	انا حران
5. The coffee is hot.	al-gahwa Harra.	القهوة حرة
6. I hope you're better soon. ('your safety')	salaamatak.	سلامتك
7. Spring and fall are the best seasons.	ar-rabii9 wu l-xariif aHsan fuṣuul.	الربيع والخريف احسن فصول
8. I believe so.	a9taqid kida.	اعتقد كده

Grammatical Notes

1. Terms for weather are:

al-jaww Harr.	The weather is hot.
al-jaww bard.	The weather is cold.
al-jaww mu9tadil.	The weather is moderate.

Also used is the word /ad-dunya/, 'the world', which is used as an idiom to mean 'It's hot', etc. This means, however, the weather only temporarily (today), whereas /al-jaww/ refers to a more permanent type of weather.

ad-dunya Harr.	It's hot.
ad-dunya bard.	It's cold.
ad-dunya ṣams.	It's sunny ('sun').

Note that /dunya/ takes a masculine adjective.

2. Adjectives which describe a temporary state often have the suffix /-aan/. They always take the /-a/ suffix for feminine and /-iin/ for plural. Among the most frequent are:

Harraan	hot	حران
bardaan	cold	بردان
ta9baan	tired	تعبان
jii9aan	hungry	جبان
9aṭṣaan	thirsty	عطشان
ghalṭaan	wrong	غلطان
xarbaan	out of order	خربان

Note that, for example, /Harraan/, /bardaan/, and /ghalṭaan/ are used to describe a person's state, not /Harr/, /bard/, and /ghalaṭ/, which are used for inanimate nouns.

3. The four directions are:

ṣamaal	north	شمال
januub	south	جنوب
ṣarg	east	شرق
gharb	west	غرب

When two directions are combined, they are placed in a noun construct:

januub gharb al-wilaayaat    the southwest United States  
al-muttaHida

ana min ṣamaal ṣarg    I am from northeast  
wilaayat New York    New York State.

4. Since most Saudis are not very familiar with American place names, it is clearer to identify places as 'the state of Ohio', 'the state of New York', 'the city of Chicago', etc.:

ana min wilaayat  
New York. I am from the state  
of New York.

ana min madiinat  
Boston. I am from the city  
of Boston.

5. The four seasons are:

aṣ-ṣeeḥ	summer
aṣ-ṣita	winter
ar-rabii9	spring
al-xariif	fall
aṣ-ṣeeḥ al-maaḍi	last summer
aṣ-ṣeeḥ al-jayy (etc.)	next summer

الصيف  
الشتا  
الربيع  
الخريف

In Saudi Arabia, one rarely refers to spring and fall.

6. /simi9t kida/, 'I've heard that', and /giriit kida/'I've read that', are idioms. /kida/ may be used in this way with other types of verbs to mean 'I thought so', 'I hoped so', 'I feared that', etc.

simi9t kida.	I've heard that.
giriit kida.	I've read that.
a9taqid kida.	I believe so.

7. /simi9/ is used with /9an/ to express 'to hear about':

simi9t 9annu.	I've heard about him.
simi9t 9an al-maṣruu9.	I've heard about the project.

8. The expression /ta9baan ṣwayya/, literally, 'a little tired', is often used as a euphemism to mean 'sick'. (The word is /mariiq/, but this usually means it is quite serious.)

9. When someone mentions illness, the appropriate statement is:

salaamatak	your (m) safety
salaamatu	his safety
salaamatha (etc.)	her safety

The response is:

aḷlaah yisallimak	[May] God make you (m) safe.
aḷlaah yisallimik	[May] God make you (f) safe.
aḷlaah yisallimkum	[May] God make you (p) safe.

Vocabulary Notes

at9awwad, yit9awwid (9ala)	get used to, become accustomed to
simi9, yisma9	hear
giri, yigra (giriit)	read
a9taqad, ya9taqid	believe

اتعود يتمود (على)

سمع يسمع  
قري يقرى (قرئت)  
اعتقد يعتقد

faṣl, fuṣuul  
wilaaya, -aat

season, class  
state (of the U.S.A.)

فصل  
ولايات

Drills

1. The weather is hot.

al-jaww Harr.

الجو حر

Substitute:

cold  
moderate  
sunny  
very hot  
like winter  
bad  
pleasant

2. You [will] get used  
to it.

tit9awwid 9alee.

تعود عليه

Substitute:

he  
we  
she  
they  
you (f)  
you (p)  
the children  
the foreigners

3. It's like the  
southwest United  
States.

zayy januub gharb  
al-wilaayaat  
al-muttaHida.

زي جنوب غرب الولايات  
المتحدة

Substitute:

north  
east  
south  
northeast  
west  
southwest

4. In the north the  
weather is cold in  
winter.

fiṣ-ṣamaal ad-dunya  
bard fiṣ-ṣita.

في الشمال الدنيا برد  
في الشتاء

Substitute:

in the fall  
in the spring  
in the west  
warm  
in the summer  
in the fall  
in the east  
cold  
pleasant  
in the winter  
in the north  
cold

5. I've read about it. giriit 9annu.

قرئت عنه

Substitute:

we  
she  
will read  
he  
you (m)  
must read  
they  
you (p)  
did not read  
you (f)  
I  
they

6. I'm cold.

ana bardaan.

انا بردان

Substitute:

wrong  
tired  
we  
hot  
hungry  
thirsty  
sick  
he  
a little hungry  
very hungry  
they  
cold  
wrong  
thirsty  
hot

Situations

1.
  - A. Do you know that summer is very hot in Saudi Arabia?
  - B. Yes, I've read that (/kida/). But I like the heat (/al-Harr/). And you?
  - A. No, but I got used to it.
  - B. Which season is best here?
  - A. The winter, that is (/ya9ni/), December, January, and February.
2.
  - A. Where are you going?
  - B. To visit a Saudi family which I met in America. Would you like to come?
  - A. Certainly. This will be the first time [that] I visit a Saudi home.
  - B. They have heard about you, and they want to meet you.
3.
  - A. The account is not correct.
  - B. I'm sorry, I'm wrong. I forgot that you paid last week.
  - A. Never mind. How is your health? Better, if God wills?
  - B. A little, but I'm still tired.
  - A. Really? "Hope you're feeling better soon".
  - B. "Thanks".

LESSON 35

Dialogue

	rain	maṭar	مطر
A.	Is there rain in Jidda?	fii maṭar fi jidda?	فيه مطر في جدة؟
	mountains	jibaal	جبال
B.	Never. But there is rain in Taif, in the mountains.	muu katiir. laakin fii maṭar fiṭ-ṭaayif, fil-jibaal.	مو كثير. لकिन فيه مطر في الطائف، في الجبال.
A.	Mountains?	al-jibaal?	الجبال؟
	desert	ṣaHra	صحرا
	seacoasts	ṣawaṭi'	شواطئ
B.	Of course. Saudi Arabia is not all desert[s] and seacoasts.	ṭab9an. as-su9uudiyya mahi kullaha ṣaHra wu ṣawaṭi'.	طبعاً. السعودية مهي كلها صحرا وشواطئ.
	always	dayman	دايم
	they think	yizunnu	يظنوا
	composed of	9ibaara 9an	عبارة عن
	sand	raml	رمل
	oases	waaHaat	واحات
	palmtrees	naxil	نخل
A.	Foreigners always think that it is composed of desert, sand, oases, and palmtrees.	al-ajaanib dayman yizunnu annaha 9ibaara 9an ṣaHra wu raml wu waaHaat wu naxil.	الاجانب دايم يظنوا انها عبارة عن صحرا ورمل وواحات ونخل.
	rivers	anhaar	انهار
	areas, regions	manaṭig	مناطق
	agricultural	ziraa9iyya	زراعية
B.	That's true, but there are also rivers and agricultural areas.	haada ṣaHiiH, laakin fii kamaan anhaar wu manaṭig ziraa9iyya.	هاذا صحيح لकिन فيه كمان انهار ومناطق زراعية.

Structure Sentences

1.	We go to Taif usually in the summer.	niruuH aṭ-ṭaayif 9aadatan fiṣ-ṣeef.	نروح الطائف عادة في الصيف.
2.	There is never [any] snow.	ma fii talj abadan.	ما فيه تلج ابدًا.
3.	He never went. (He has never gone.)	ma raaH abadan.	ما راح ابدًا.
4.	I have never met the prince.	ma gaabalt al-amiir abadan.	ما قابلت الامير ابدًا.

- |                                 |                              |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 5. The trees are green.         | aš-šajar axḡar.              | الشجر اخضر.            |
| 6. The flowers are pretty.      | al-ward Hilu.                | الورد حلو.             |
| 7. I want to buy three flowers. | abgha aštari talaata wuruud. | ابغس اشترى ثلاثة ورود. |

Grammatical Notes

1. /abadan/ is used with a negative verb (cf. Structure Sentences 2 and 3).
2. Arabic has, in addition to singular, dual, and plural nouns, a special "collective plural" for some nouns. Most collective plurals are formed by omitting the /-a/ feminine ending of a singular noun:

warda	a flower	وردة
ward	flowers	ورد
šajara	a tree	شجرة
šajar	trees	شجر
naxla	a palmtree	نخلة
naxil	palmtrees	نخل
leemuuna	a lemon	ليمونة
leemuun	lemons	ليمون

The collective plural is always masculine singular:

al-ward Hilu.	The flowers are pretty.
aš-šajar axḡar.	The trees are green.
an-naxil kabiir wu Hilu.	The palmtrees are big and pretty.
al-leemuun raxiiṣ.	The lemons are cheap.

When the noun is "counted" with a numeral, it takes its regular plural:

abgha aštari talaata wuruud.	I want to buy three flowers.
fii arba9a naxlaat kubaar wara beeti.	There are four big palmtrees behind my house.

The collective plural is used when referring to a group of things in general, whereas the "counted" plural is used with numerals. Collective plurals are also used when buying something by weight, e.g., "a kilo of lemons" (/kiilu leemuun/). They are especially common for all types of foods which are measured by weight or volume, and more will be introduced in Lesson 37.

Vocabulary Notes

jabal, jibaal	mountain	جبل
nahar, anhaar	river	نهر
šaati', šawaati'	seacoast	شاطئ
šaHra, šaHaari	desert	صحراء صحاري
manṡiga, manaatiḡ	area, region	منطقة مناطق
šajara, ašjaar	tree	شجرة اشجار
naxla, -aat	palmtree	نخلة -ات
warda, wuruud	flower	وردة ورود
waaHa, -aat	oasis	واحة -ات
ḡann, yiḡunn (ḡanneet)	think	ظن يظن (ظنيت)



Drills

1. Is there rain in Jidda? fii maṭar fi jidda? فيه مطر في جدة؟

Substitute:

in Riyadh  
snow  
in Saudi Arabia  
in the mountains  
sun  
at the seacoast  
rain  
cold  
in the city

2. It ('she') is composed of desert. hiyya 9ibaara 9an ṣaHra. هي عبارة عن صحراء.

Substitute:

sand  
palmtrees  
seacoasts  
oases  
mountains  
many trees  
cities  
rivers  
agricultural areas  
desert

3. We usually go in the summer. niruuH 9aadatan fiṣ-ṣeef. نروح عادة في الصيف.

Substitute:

in the winter  
in the fall  
every year  
in the spring  
always  
early in the year  
twice  
in the middle of the summer  
in April

4. He never went. ma raaH abadan. ما راح ابدا.

Substitute:

traveled  
bought a television  
met the prince  
drove  
cleaned the car  
taught Arabic  
finished his education  
visited me  
said that (/kida/)

5. Given the singular noun, change it to collective plural and then counted plural:

naxla  
šajara  
warda  
leemuuna

نخلة  
شجرة  
وردة  
ليمونة

6. The trees are green. aš-šajar axḡar.

الشجر اخضر.

Substitute:

palm trees  
pretty  
flowers  
red  
yellow  
big  
trees  
expensive  
lemons  
cheap  
green  
small  
palm trees  
numerous ('many')  
tall

Situations

1.
  - A. How is the weather in Yemen?
  - B. It is always very cold in the winter because Yemen consists of many mountains. There is rain and snow, too.
  - A. Really? I thought it was ('is') a desert.
  - B. Not at all! (/abadan/) There are rivers and trees and many large agricultural areas in the west. The desert is in the middle and in the east.
  - A. I would like to visit Sanaa.
  - B. I hope you can.
2.
  - A. Are you going to the beach this Friday?
  - B. I think we'll go to the desert. The children like the sand. My wife will prepare (/tisawwi/) food for us.
  - A. Excellent. There is an oasis near here.
  - B. Like the oases in the Eastern Region?
  - A. Bigger and prettier. There is a river and flowers.
  - B. Good. I'll tell my wife.

LESSON 36

Dialogue

(At the tailor)

I need ('needing')	miHtaaaj	محتاج
suit	badla	بدلة
cotton	guṭun	قطن
A. I need a new cotton suit.	ana miHtaaaj li badla guṭun jadiida.	انا محتاج لبدلة قطن جديدة.
B. Welcome. Any service.	ahlan wu sahlān. ayy xidma.	اهلا وسهلا اي خدمة.
jacket	jakitta	جكته
(pair of) trousers	banṭaloon	بنطلون
A. I want a jacket and two trousers.	abgha jakitta wu banṭalooneen.	ابغى جكته و بنطلونين.
size	magaas	مقاس
B. Let me take your measurements.	xalliini aaxud magaasak.	خليني آخذ مقاسك.
sleeves	akmaam	الكمام
narrow	ḡayyig	ضيق
A. I want the jacket longer than that. And the sleeves narrow.	abgha al-jakitta aṭwal min kida. wu l-akmaam ḡayyiga.	ابغى الجكته اطول من كده. والاكمام ضيقة.
you (m) measure	tigiis	تقيس
B. Fine. Come for a fitting ('to "measure" it') next week.	ṭayyib. ta9aal 9aḡaan tigiisaha l-usbuu9 al-jayy.	طيب. تعال عشان تقيسها الاسبوع الجي.

Structure Sentences

1. She is a seamstress.	hiyya xayyaafa.	هي خياطة.
2. He is sewing the vest now.	huwwa 9ammaalyixayyiṭ as-sideeri daḡḡiin.	هو عمال يخييط السديري دحين.
3. Leave the pants wide at the bottom.	siib al-banṭaloon waasi9 min taḡat.	سيب البنطلون واسع من تحت.
4. This shirt is [too] tight.	haada l-gamiis ḡayyig.	هادا القميص ضيق.
5. I want to buy a leather belt.	abgha aṣtari Hizaam jild.	ابغى اشترى حزام جلد.

6. I don't need anything else. mana miHtaaj šayy taani. منا محتاج شي ثاني.
7. I have to measure it. laazim agiisu. لازم اقيسه .

Grammatical Notes

1. 'To need' is expressed with the active participle /miHtaaj/, 'needing', sometimes used with the preposition /l-/ (/li-/):

ana miHtaaj li badla guṭun jadiida.	I need a new cotton suit.
hiyya miHtaaja musaa9ada.	She needs help.
ana kunt miHtaajlu.	I needed him.
iHna miHtaajiinlu.	We need him.

2. Adjectives of "quality" which describe the material of which something consists are used in the masculine singular form only:

badla guṭun	a cotton suit
šanta jild	a leather purse
Hizaam jild	a leather belt
fustaan šuuf	a wool dress
fasaatiin šuuf	wool dresses

Note that these nouns are not in a construct state.

3. In English we say "a pair of pants", "a pair of shoes", etc., making the noun plural. In Arabic, it is expressed as singular:

abgha banṭaloon jadiid.	I want a new [pair of] pant[s].
aštareet jazma sooda.	I bought black shoe[s].
aštareet jizam katiir.	I bought many [pairs of] shoes.
feen jazmati?	Where are my shoes?

4. /9ammaal/ is also used before verbs to indicate an on-going action. It is not conjugated:

huwwa 9ammaal yixayyiṭ.	He is sewing.
hiyya 9ammaal titkallam.	She is talking.

Vocabulary Notes

waasi9, -iin*	wide
ḡayyig, -iin*	narrow
sahl, -iin*	easy
ša9b, -iin*	difficult, hard
miHtaaj, -iin	needing, in need of
gaas, yigiis (gist)	measure, try on
xayyaṭ, yixayyiṭ	sew

واسع - ين  
ضيق - ين  
سهل - ين  
صعب - ين  
محتاج - ين  
قاس يقيس (تست)  
خيط يخيط



Substitute:

the dress  
she  
is finishing  
is cleaning  
the shoes  
the suitcase  
I  
the belt  
the trousers

5. Leave the pants wide at the bottom.      siib al-banṭaloon waasi9 min taḤat.

سبب البنطلون واسع  
من تحت

Substitute:

narrow  
at the top (/min foog/  
sleeve  
at the bottom  
wide  
dress  
short

Situations

1.
  - A. Can you (f) make ('sew') me a dress?
  - B. Yes, which material?
  - A. I need a cotton dress because the weather is [so] hot now.
  - B. That will be easy. Let me take your (f) measurements.
  - A. Can you make it quickly?
  - B. If God wills, in two days ('after two days').
2.
  - A. I heard that prices are good in that store.
  - B. Yes, especially ties and shirts.
  - A. Let's go ask.
  - B. OK, I can put the car here.
  - A. "No standing" here. Try that place.
  - B. No, that's [too] hard.
  - A. Wait for me. I'll go in and ask and come back quickly.
3.
  - A. I'm thirsty. [Shall] we go and drink something?
  - B. OK. The weather is sunny, especially in the afternoon.
  - A. It's always like this (/kida/) in the summer. But in the mountains it's moderate. We must visit Taif.
  - B. I agree. I have wanted ('want') to see Taif since last year.

LESSON 37

Dialogue

(An invitation to dinner)

meat	laHam	لحم
A. Welcome. Go ahead [and have some of] the meat.	ahlan wu sahan. atfaḍḍal al-laHam.	اهلا وسهلا . اتفضل اللحم
delicious	ṭi9im	طعم
rice	ruzz	رز
B. Thank you. It's delicious. And the rice, too.	ṣukran. huwwa ṭi9im. w ar-ruzz kamaan.	شكرا. هو طعم. والرز كمان.
strength	9aafiya	عافية
you (m) honored	ṣarraft	شرفت
A. To your strength. You have honored us.	bil-9aafiya. ṣarraftana.	بالعافية. شرفتنا.
table (of food)	sufra	سفرة
eternal	daayma	دائمة
B. I am honored. That's enough, thanks be to God. [May your] table always be thus.	ṣukran, kifaaya, al-Hamdu lillaah. sufra daayma.*	شكرا، كفاية الحمد لله . سفرة دائمة.
presence	wujuud	وجود
A. Due to your presence.	b-wujuudakum.	بوجودكم.

\*Also commonly said to the host is /9aamir/, 'filled'.

Structure Sentences

1. The food was placed on the table.	al-akl anHaṭṭ 9as-sufra.	الاكل انحط عالسفرة.
2. The money was spent.	al-fuluus anṣarafat.	الفلوس انصرفت.
3. The money must be spent.	al-fuluus laazim tinṣarif.	الفلوس لازم تنصرف.
4. May your hands be blessed (literally, 'made safe').	tislam iideekum.	تسلم ايديكم.
5. Don't trouble yourself.	laa tita99ib nafsak.	لا تتعب نفسك.
6. Not at all--it's no trouble.	abadan--ma fii ta9b.	ابدا . ما فيه تعب.
7. The food is excellent.	al-akl mumtaaz.	الاكل ممتاز.
8. Eat [some] grapes.	kul 9inab.	كل عنب.

9. I bought a lemon. aštareet Habba leemuun. اشترت حبة ليمون.  
 10. He talked to himself. kallam nafsu. كلم نفسه.

Grammatical Notes

1. The passive verb in Saudi Arabic can be expressed in several ways. The most frequent is the use of the prefix /an-/ or /at-/ with the perfect tense, which becomes infix (in the middle of the word) in the imperfect tense. It is a regular pattern:

anšaraf, yinšarif	be spent
anfataH, yinfatiH	be opened
ankatab, yinkatib	be written

Other types of verbs:

anHaṭṭ, yinHaṭṭ	be put, placed
anšaaf, yinšaaf	be seen
atšarraf, yitšarrif	be honored

You cannot predict which prefix will be used with each verb, so you should learn each passive verb separately. However, the /an-/ prefix is much more common.

Quite rare is a passive expressed with an active-form verb, but it occurs sometimes in classicized expressions (it is also a rare pattern in Classical Arabic):

tislam iideekum. May your hands be blessed.

The passive verb is conjugated for all persons, and is of course derived from transitive verbs (which take an object). Not all verbs can be made passive; it is a matter of style that some expressions are simply always said in the active voice, for example:

jaabu. It was brought. ('He brought it'.)

(/anjaab/ is grammatically correct but sounds unnatural in style.)

Some of the most common passive verbs are:

ankatab, yinkatib	be written	انكتب ينكتب
anfataH, yinfatiH	be opened	انفتح يفتح
angafal, yingafil	be closed	انغفل يغلغل
anšaraf, yinšarif	be spent	انصرف ينصرف
anʿamal, yinʿamil	be done	انعمل يعمل
anšaaf, yinšaaf	be seen	انشاف ينشاف
anšaal, yinšaal	be carried	انشال ينشال
ansaab, yinsaab	be left behind	انساب ينساب
anHaṭṭ, yinHaṭṭ	be put, placed	انحط ينحط
atšarraf, yitšarrif	be honored	اتشرف يتشرف
atʿarraf, yitʿarrif	be introduced	اتعرف يتعرف
atʿawwad, yitʿawwid	be accustomed	اتعود يتعود
atʿallam, yitʿallim	be educated	اتعلم يتعلم

2. /sufra/ refers to a dining table, or more precisely, the top of it or the place where food is spread out. /ʿarabiiza/ refers to any table.



3. /iideen/, 'hands' (literally, 'two hands') becomes /iidee-/ before pronoun endings. There is an alternative way to say 'hands' (discussed in Lesson 44), but this form is used for this expression.

tislam iideekum.	May your (p) hands be blessed.
tislam iideek.	May your (m) hands be blessed.
tislam iideeki.	May your (f) hands be blessed.

This expression is used to compliment the quality of something which has been produced by someone's hands. You will hear it used most often referring to food.

4. The expression presented in Structure Sentence 5 is very commonly said by a guest to his host. Structure Sentence 6 is the conventional response.

5. The word /Habba/ means 'one' or 'a piece'. It is used referring to items of food.

Habba leemuun	one lemon
Habba Halaawa	a piece of candy
Habba tuffaaH	an apple

6. To express 'self' as the reflexive object ('I hurt myself', etc.), /nafs-/ is used with pronoun endings:

nafsu	himself	نفسه
nafsaha	herself	نفسها
nafsahum	themselves	نفسهم
nafsak	yourself (m)	نفسك
nafsik	yourself (f)	نفسك
nafsakum	yourselves	نفسكم
nafsi	myself	نفسي
nafsana	ourselves	نفسنا
laa tita99ib nafsak.	Don't trouble ('tire') yourself (m).	
laa tita99ibi nafsik.	Don't trouble yourself (f).	
laa tita99ibu nafsakum.	Don't trouble yourselves.	
kallam nafsu.	He talked to himself	
kallamat nafsaha.	She talked to herself.	

Vocabulary Notes

(Words given as collective plurals)

Meats (laHam, luHuum)

dajaaj, -aat	chicken	لحم لحوم
xaruuf, xirfaan	lamb	دجاج -ات
samak, asmaak	fish	خروف خرفان
laHam baqar	beef ('cow meat')	سمك اسماك
		لحم بقر

Vegetables (xuḍaar)

baḣal	onions	خيار
baḣaaḥiis	potatoes	بصل
ḥamaaḥim	tomatoes	بطاطس
bazaaliya	peas	طماطم
faaḣuuliyya xadḥa	green beans	بازاليا
xiyaar	cucumbers	فاصوليا خضرا
xaaḥḥ	lettuce	خيار
		خس

Fruits (faakha, fawaakih)

فاكهة فواكه

9inab	grapes	عنب
burtukaan	oranges	برتقال
tuffaaH	apples	تفاح
balaH	red dates	بلح
tamur	dried dates	تمر
mooz	bananas	موز

Other

xubz	bread	خبز
zibda	butter	زبد
ruzz	rice	رز
beeđ	eggs	بيض
řalařa	salad	صلصة
milH	salt	ملح
filfil	pepper	فلفل

řarraf, yiřarraf	honor	شرف يشرف
at9arraf, yit9arraf (9ala)	to be introduced to, become acquainted with	اتعرف بتعرف (على)
ta99ab, yita99ib	tire, bother	تعيب يتعب
akal, yaakul	eat	اكل ياكل
ři9im, -a, -iin*	delicious	لحم -ين

\*The plural form /ři9miin/ may refer to people, for example, children, and mean 'lovely'.

Drills

1. Go ahead [and have some] meat.      atfađđal al-laHam.      اتفضل اللحم

Substitute:

- the chicken
- the fish
- the salad
- the dates
- the potatoes
- the lamb
- the butter

2. You (m) have honored us.      řarraftana.\*      شرفتنا

- you (f)
- you (p)

\*This expression is usually used with 'us'.

3. Given the verb in the active voice, change it to passive (perfect and imperfect).

Example: katab → ankatab, yinkatib      كتب ← انكتب ينكتب

Continue:

gafal  
šaaf  
Haṭṭ  
saab  
ḡarraḡ  
ḡallam  
ṣaraf  
ḡamal  
ṣarraḡ  
ḡawwad  
fataḡ  
ṣaal

قفل  
شاف  
حط  
ساب  
عرف  
علم  
صرف  
عمل  
شرف  
عود  
فتح  
شال

4. The food was placed on the table. al-akl anHaṭṭ ḡas-sufra.

الاكل انحط عالسفرة.

Substitute:

the rice  
the water  
the salad  
the tea  
the salt  
the coffee  
the sugar  
the fruit

5. The money must be spent.

al-fuluus laazim tinṣarif.

الفلوس لازم تنصرف.

Substitute:

be removed (use /ṣaal/)  
the food  
be put [down]  
the books  
be opened  
be carried  
the boy  
be educated  
be introduced to the man  
I  
become accustomed to the weather

6. He talked to himself. kallam nafsu.

كلم نفسه.

Substitute:

she  
I  
we  
saw  
they  
you (m)  
heard  
you (f)  
he  
the children  
cleaned  
tired

Situations

1.
  - A. Welcome! Sit down and eat with us.
  - B. Thanks. I'm a little hungry.
  - A. Have more rice ('rice also'). You have honored us.
  - B. I'm honored. The food is delicious. Bless your (p) hands.
  - A. Thanks. Due to your presence. Welcome.
  - B. I hope you (p) honor me in my home soon.
  - A. Have [some] again.
  - B. No, thanks. Thanks be to God, I've eaten enough.

2.
  - A. I'm going to the souk.
  - B. To buy food?
  - A. Yes, [some] vegetables and fruits. What would you like?
  - B. Buy bananas, also onions and potatoes. And bread, of course. But don't tire yourself.
  - A. I'll be back ('return') soon, if God wills.
  - B. Goodby.
  - A. Goodby.

Cultural Notes

1. An Arab host repeats phrases of welcome to his guest frequently, and presses food on him. Many polite expressions are exchanged. Since the host will continue to insist that you eat more and more, take small amounts of food at the beginning; you will probably be expected to eat three courses. Go hungry; eating a lot is one way to express appreciation for the food, and helps the host display his generosity and hospitality.

Before eating, Saudis often say the phrase /bism illaah ar-raHmaan ar-raHiim/, 'In the name of God, the Merciful, and Compassionate'. After the meal it is customary to say /al-Hamdu lillaah/ (or /al-Hamdu lillaah wu šukran/). The dialogue presented in this lesson reflects the routine expressions used between the host and guests during a typical meal.

LESSON 38

Dialogue

(In a restaurant)

requests	ṭalabaat	طلبات
A. May I help you? (literally, 'What are your requests?')	eeš ṭalabaatakum?*	ايشر طلباتكم؟
menu	lista	لستة
lunch	ghada	غدا
B. A menu, please. I'd like to order lunch.	al-lista, min faḍlak. aHubb aṭlub ghada.	اللستة من فضلك. احب اطلب غدا.
fresh	ṭaaza	طازة
A. Today we have fresh fish.	al-yoom 9indana samak ṭaaza.	اليوم عندنا سمك طازة.
B. OK. And bring techina and salad, and a Pepsi.	ṭayyib. wu jiiib ṭaHiina wu ṣaḷaṭa wu bibsi-kuula.	طيب. وجيب طحينية وصلطة وببسي كولا.
dessert (literally, 'something sweet')	ṣayy Hilu	شي حلو
A. Right away. Would you like dessert?	Haaḍir. tibgha ṣayy Hilu?	حاضر. تجبني شي حلو؟
check ('account')	Hisaab	حساب
the change ('the rest')	al-baagi	الباقى
B. Baklawa, and then bring the check. Keep the change.	baglaawa, wu ba9deen jiiib al-Hisaab. xalli l-baagi lak.	بقلاوة، وبعدين جيب الحساب خلّ الباقي لك.

\*An alternative opening statement is /ayy xidma lakum?/, 'Any service for you?'

Structure Sentences

1. I'd like to order dinner.	aHubb aṭlub 9aṣa.	احب اطلب عشا.
2. What time is breakfast?	as-saa9a kam al-faṭuur?	الساعة كم الفطور؟
3. The tip is 15%.	al-xidma xamaṣṭa9ṣ fil-miyya.**	الخدمة خمستمش في المية.
4. He is a good writer.	huwwa ṣufraji ṭayyib.	هو صفرجي طيب.
5. I ate in the same restaurant.	akalt fi rafs al-maṭ9am.	اكلت في نفس المطعم.
6. We arrived at the same time.	waṣalna fi nafs al-waqt.	وصلنا في نفس الوقت.

7. Let's go to his house ('to him') some time. xalliina niruHlu marra. خالينا نروحله مرة.
8. We ate stuffed peppers and shish kabob. akalna filfil maHsi wu kabaab. اكلنا فلفل محشي وكباب.

\*\*Another common word for 'tip' is /baxšiis/.

Grammatical Notes

1. /ṭaaza/, 'fresh', is not declined for gender or number.

2. To express 'per cent', use /fil-miyya/:

xamaṣṭa9š fil-miyya	15%
xamsa wu 9išriin fil-miyya	25%
miyya fil-miyya	100%

3. /al-baagi/ literally means 'the rest', 'the remaining'. The word for 'change' (money) is /fakka/.

4. Some of the more common Saudi dishes are:

maHsi (bidinjaan, kuusa, filfil)	stuffed (eggplant, squash, peppers) (etc.)	محشي (بدنجان، كوسا، فلفل)
kabaab	shish kabob	كباب
kufta	ground spiced meat	كفتة
ṣayaadiyya	fish, onions, and rice	صياضية
mašwi (dajaaḡ, xaruuf)	grilled (chicken, lamb)	مشوي (دجاج، خروف)
ṭaḥiina	sesame dip	طحينة
ruzz 9adas	rice with lentils	رز عدس
saliig	rice cooked with milk and meat	سليق
baglaawa	baklava (syrup-covered pastry)	بقلاوة

5. /nafs/ may be used with a definite noun to mean 'same':

nafs al-maṭ9am	the same restaurant
fi nafs al-waqt	at the same time

6. /marra/, 'occasion', may be used alone to mean 'some time':

xalliina niruHlu marra.	Let's go to his place some time.
-------------------------	----------------------------------

Vocabulary Notes

lista, lisat	menu	لستة لست
ṣufraji, -yiin	waiter	صفرجي - يمين
maṭ9am, maṭaa9im	restaurant	مطعم - مطاعم

Drills

1. I'd like to order lunch. aḤubb aṭlub ghada. احب اطلب غدا.

Substitute:

dinner  
we  
breakfast  
they  
lunch  
I

2. Today we have fresh fish.      al-yoom 9indana samak ʔaaza.

اليوم عندنا سمك  
كأزة.

Substitute:

shish kabob  
stuffed peppers  
chicken and rice  
grilled lamb

3. The tip is 15%.      al-xidma xamaʔa9 fil-miyya.

الخدمة خمستعشر  
في المئة.

Substitute:

50%  
25%  
10%  
5%

4. I ate in the same restaurant.      akalt fi nafs al-maʔ9am.

اكلت في نفس المطعم.

Substitute:

at the same time  
in the same house  
with the same man  
in the same room  
the same food yesterday

5. Let's go to his place some time.      niruHlu marra.

نروحله مرة.

Substitute:

let's visit him  
let's eat there  
let's try to go  
let's travel together  
let's clean the car  
let's talk to the director  
let's send them a letter  
let's practice

### Situations

- 1.
- A. A menu, please. We'd like to order dinner.
- B. Right away. We have Arab food here.
- A. Do you have grilled chicken?
- B. Of course. We have grilled lamb for the same price.
- A. (to his wife): What would you like?
- C. Lamb. And stuffed squash. And bread and butter.

- A. I, too. How much is the tip?  
C. Between ten and fifteen per cent. 15% is better.  
A. (to the waiter) Keep the change.
2.  
A. Did your family go to the seashore last Friday?  
B. Yes, we all went in the same car. We have a cabin (/kabiina/) there.  
A. I heard that there is a restaurant there.  
B. Yes, they have French food.  
A. I'll try to go with you (p) the next time. Don't forget to tell me.  
B. Welcome, any time. The children send their greetings ('greet you').
3.  
A. What time is lunch?  
B. Lunch in the hotel restaurant is from 12:00 to 3:00.  
A. Are the waiters good?  
B. Yes, the service (/xidma/) is excellent.  
A. Let's go there some time.  
B. OK, maybe tomorrow.



LESSON 39

Dialogue

(At a fruit stand)

kilo	kiilu	كيلو
A. I want to buy a kilo of oranges.	abgha aštari kiilu burtukaan.	ابغى اشترى كيلو برتكان.
B. [They are] three riyals a kilo.	al-kiilu b-talaata riyaal.	الكيلو بثلاثة ريال.
A. Not cheaper than that?	muu arxaş min kida?	مو ارخاش من كده؟
not	la'	لا
B. Of course not, madam.	ṭab9an la' ya sitt.*	طبعا لا يا ست.
A. Do you have change for ('of') fifty riyals?	9indak fakkat xamsiin riyaal?	عندك فكة خمسين ريال؟
sorrow	asaf	اسف
you (f) change	tişrufi	تصرفي
moneychanger	şarraaf	صراف
B. No, unfortunately. ('with sorrow'). You can change your money at the moneychanger's.	la', ma9a l-asaf. mumkin tişrufi fuluusik 9ind aş-şarraaf.	لا مع الاسف ممكن تصرفي فلوسك عند الصراف.

\*Also commonly heard is /ya madaam/.

Structure Sentences

1. I'll take two and one-half meters.	aaxud mitreen wu nuşş.	أخذ مترين وثمان
2. Give me two kilos.	addiini itneen kiilu.	اديني اثنين كيلو.
3. Its weight is three pounds.	waznu talaata arṭaal.	وزنه ثلاثة ارطال.
4. What is the width of this fabric?	kam 9arḍ haada l-gumaaş?	كم عرض هادا القماش؟
5. Why not?	leeş la'?	ليش لا؟
6. I want to change the appointment.	abgha aghayyir al-maw9ad.	ابغى اغير الموعد.
7. Give me a dozen pens.	addiini dastat aglaam.	اديني دسنة اقلام.

Grammatical Notes

1. Some nouns of measurement are used only in the singular:
- |                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| addiini itneen kiilu.  | Give me two kilos.   |
| addiini talaata kiilu. | Give me three kilos. |

addiini kiilu wu rub9. Give me one and one-quarter kilos.  
 addiini 9ašara ghraam. Give me ten grams.

Nouns of measurement which do not change form are:

kiilu	kilo
ghraam	gram
litir	liter
šanti	centimeter
buuša	inch

كيلو  
غرام  
لتر  
صنطي  
برصة

Some nouns of measurement are declined for dual and plural:

aaxud mitreen wu nušš. I'll take two and one-half meters.  
 aaxud talaata amšaar. I'll take three meters.  
 waznu talaata aršaal. Its weight is three pounds.

These nouns are:

mitir, amšaar	meter
rašl, aršaal	pound
yarda, -aat	yard
gadam, agdaam	foot
dasta, -aat	dozen

متر  
رطل  
ياردة  
قدم  
دستة

2. /šab9an la'//, 'of course not', is an example of using /la'// to mean 'not'. (We have already seen /walla la'?'//, 'or not?'). Other structures like this are

leeš la'? Why not?  
 ažuun la'. I think not; I don't think so.  
 huwwa raaH w ana la'. He went and I didn't.

3. /ghayyar/, 'to change', is used in the sense of changing an appointment, your clothes, an idea, etc. For money, you use /šaraf, yišruf/, or also /fakk, yifukk/, literally, 'to take apart':

fakkeet fuluusi. I changed my money.

4. /šarraaf/ is an example of a noun which describes employment. Such nouns may be formed from verb root consonants, with the vowel pattern: C<sub>1</sub>aC<sub>2</sub>C<sub>2</sub>aaC<sub>3</sub>. Some common nouns formed on this pattern are:

<u>Noun</u>		<u>Related Word</u>	
šarraaf	'money changer'	šaraf	'spend'
sawwaag	'driver'	saag	'drive'
xayyaaš	'tailor'	xayyaš	'sew'
šabbaax	'cook'	šabax	'cook'
najjaar	'carpenter'	najar	'hew, carve'
xabbaaz	'baker'	xubz	'bread'
xaddaam	'servant'	xidma	'service'
Hammaal	'porter'	Hamal	'carry'
jazzaar	'butcher'	jazar	'slaughter'
baggaal	'grocer'	(none in common use)	
jarraaH	'surgeon'	jaraH	'wound'
fallaaH	'peasant'	falaH	'cultivate'

صراف  
سواق  
خباط  
طباخ  
نجار  
خباز  
خدام  
حمال  
جزار  
بقال  
جراح  
فلاح

Vocabulary Notes

ghayyar, yighayyir  
fakk, yifukk (fakkeet)  
wazn, awzaan  
tuul  
9arq

change  
change (money); take apart  
weight  
height, length  
width

غير يغير  
فك فك (فكيت)  
وزن اوزان  
طول  
عرض

Drills

1. I want to buy a kilo  
of oranges.

abgha aštari kiilu  
burtukaan.

ابغى اشترى كيلو برتكان.

Substitute:

one-half kilo  
two kilos  
five kilos  
one dozen  
two dozen

2. Not cheaper than that?

muu arxaş min kida?

مو ارخص من كده؟

Substitute:

better  
bigger  
smaller  
prettier  
older  
newer  
more beautiful

3. Do you have change for  
fifty riyals?

9indak fakkat xamsiin  
riyaal?

عندك فكة خمسين ريال؟

Substitute:

50 dollars  
35 dollars  
you (p)  
100 riyals  
500 riyals  
he  
10 dollars

4. You (f) can change  
your money at the  
moneychanger's.

mumkin tişrufi fuluusik  
9ind aş-şarraaf.

ممکن تصرفي فلوسك  
عند الصراف

Substitute:

you (m)  
they  
she  
at the bank  
you (p)  
I  
in the store  
we  
he  
at the moneychanger's

5. I'll take two and one-half meters.      aaxud mitreen wu nuss.

أخذ مترين ونصف

Substitute:

- 3 meters
- 1 meter
- 1/2 meter
- 1 meter and 10 centimeters
- 25 centimeters
- 1 yard
- 1 1/4 yards
- 6 inches
- 2 feet
- 3 feet
- 1 liter
- 4 1/2 liters

6. Ask the questions and then answer it.

Example: What is its weight? Its weight is three pounds.

kam waznu?      →      waznu talaata arṭaal.

كم وزنه؟ ← وزنه ثلاثة ارطال.

Continue:

- |                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| What is its width?  | 2 1/2 meters.           |
| What is its length? | 1 yard and 5 inches.    |
| What is its weight? | About 150 pounds.       |
| What is its length? | 3 1/4 feet.             |
| What is its width?  | 40 centimeters.         |
| What is its weight? | 15 kilos and 200 grams. |

7. He works as a driver.      huwwa yiṣṭaghil sawwaag.

هو يشتغل سواق.

Substitute:

- cook
- servant
- porter
- tailor
- carpenter
- butcher

#### Situations

1.
  - A. I want to change my appointment with the minister.
  - B. OK, when would you like to come?
  - A. Give me an appointment the day after tomorrow.
  - B. Unfortunately he will be in Riyadh. Can you come Thursday?
  - A. I don't think so. I'll call you ('talk to you on the telephone').
  - B. Goodby.
2.
  - A. Let's go to the grocery store (/9ind al-baggaal/).
  - B. OK, I'll come with you.

BASIC COURSE

---

A. We want to buy two kilos of onions.

B. Anything else?

A. Do you have eggs?

B. Yes, how many dozen?

A. Two dozen are enough. Don't you have eggs bigger than that?

B. Yes, here. Just for you ('your sake').

A. Do you have change for 50 riyals?

B. Yes, ma'am. Any service.

3.

A. Please have some more [food]. (/atfaḍḍal kamaan/).

B. Thanks. Everything is delicious. A little rice, please.

A. No, you must eat more than that!

B. I can't, really (/wallah/). OK, a little meat, too. You're an excellent  
cock!

A. We're honored by your presence.

B. May your hands be blessed.

A. Thank you. Come again. (/atfaḍḍal taani/).

B. If God wills.



4. Respond to the statements and questions:

laazim asta'zin.  
 waHaštani.  
 as-salaamu 9aleekum.  
 šabaaH al-xeer.  
 tišbaH 9ala xeer.  
 šukran.  
 ma9a s-salaama.  
 šloonak?  
 ismaHli.  
 aHubb a9arrifak 9ala s-sayyid šariif.  
 rabbana yiwaffig.  
 šarraftana.  
 ahlan wu sahlan.  
 atfaḍḍal.  
 tislam iideek.  
 marHaba.  
 9an iznak.  
 salaamatak.  
 mabruuk.  
 ana aasif.  
 keef Haalak?  
 huwwa yisallim 9aleek.

لازم استأذن.  
 وحشتني.  
 السلام عليكم.  
 صباح الخير.  
 تصبح على خير.  
 شكراً.  
 مع السلامة.  
 شلونك؟  
 اسمحلي.  
 احب أعرفك على السيد شريف.  
 ربنا يوفق.  
 شرفتنا.  
 اهلاً وسهلاً.  
 اتفضل.  
 تسلم ايديك.  
 مرحباً.  
 عن اذنك.  
 سلامتك.  
 مبروك.  
 انا أسف.  
 كيف حالك؟  
 هو يسلم عليك.

Narratives

1. I went to the souk today and bought two shirts--a blue one and a white one. They are lightweight cotton because [the] summer is coming and the weather is already hot. I also bought a blue blouse for my wife and a beautiful purse for my daughter. I talked to a friend who told me that the prices are high ('expensive') here, more than in Lebanon. But everything is available (/mawjuud/) in the souk.
2. You're a little tired? To your safety! If God wills you will be well tomorrow. Do you want [any] help in anything? Your friends asked about you this morning. Go ahead home--you need sleep. Telephone me later.
3. I want a kilo of sugar and a dozen eggs. Do you have fresh fruits? Where are these dates from? I heard that the best dates are in September. OK, give me only half a pound.

LESSON 41

Dialogue

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| I rent<br>apartment  | asta'jir<br>šagga   | استأجر<br>شقة   |
| A. I want to rent an<br>apartment.   | abgha asta'jir šagga.   | ابغى استأجر شقة.  |
| if<br>rent   | iza<br>iijaar   | إذا<br>أيجار  |
| B. I don't have any empty<br>apartments now, but if<br>you want a house, I heard<br>that there is one for<br>rent. | ma 9indi šugag faađya daHHiin,<br>laakin iza tiHubb beet, ana<br>simi9t innu fii waaHid lil-<br>iijaar. | ما عندي شقق<br>فاضية ردين،<br>لاكن إذا تحب<br>بيت انا سمعت<br>انه فيه واحد للايجار. |
| A. How much is the rent?<br>bedrooms   | kam al-iijaar?<br>ghuraf noom   | كم الايجار؟<br>غرف نوم  |
| B. It's expensive--about<br>3,000 riyals per<br>month. [There are]<br>in it three bedrooms.<br>at the expense of   | huwwa ghaali--Hawaali talaata<br>alaaf riyaal fiš-šahar.<br>fii talaata ghuraf noom.<br>9ala Hisaab     | هو غالي. حوالي<br>ثلاثة الاف ريال<br>في الشهر. فيه<br>ثلاثة غرف نوم.<br>على حساب    |
| A. OK, let's see it. My<br>rent is at company<br>expense. What's the<br>address?<br>hospital                       | ṭayyib, xalliina nišuufu.<br>iijaari 9ala Hisaab<br>aš-šarika. eeš al-9inwaan?<br>mustašfa              | طيب خلينا نشوفه.<br>أيجاري على حساب<br>الشركة. ايشر<br>العنوان؟<br>مستشفى           |
| B. I'm not sure. It's near<br>the new hospital.  | ana mana mit'akkid. gariib<br>min al-mustašfa l-jadiid.   | انا منا متأكد. قريب<br>من المستشفى<br>الجديد.                                       |

Structure Sentences

- |   |                                   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. My rent is at government<br>expense. | iijaari 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma.   | أيجاري على حساب<br>الحكومة. |
| 2. My address is on this<br>card.       | 9inwaani 9ala haada l-kart.       | عنواني على هادا<br>الكارت.  |
| 3. I want a two-bedroom<br>apartment.   | abgha šagga b-ghurfateen<br>noom. | ابغى شقة بغرفتين<br>نوم.    |
| 4. The kitchen is [too]<br>small.       | al-maṭbax šaghiir.                | المطبخ صغير.                |
| 5. Is there air-<br>conditioning?       | fii takyiif?                      | فيه تكييف؟                  |



Grammatical Notes

1. /iza/, 'if', is used when speaking of the conditional present, past, or future:

iza tiHubb	if you like; if you would like
iza raaHu	if they went
iza niruuH bukra	if we go tomorrow

The word /law/, 'if', is used when speaking of the conditional which is "contrary to fact":

law raaHu	if they had gone (but they did not)
law kunt malik	if I were king

Using the conditional in Arabic is not difficult. Conditional structures may vary from the above rules, depending on the speaker (there is considerable variation in its use among the dialects of Arabic). For your own production, stay with the above rule and you will be correct. But you may also hear /iza/ used with the perfect verb even when referring to present or future:

iza Habbeet tiruuH	if you want to go
iza ruHna bukra	if we go tomorrow

Some speakers also use /law/ in this way:

law Habbeet tiruuH	if you want to go
law ruHna bukra	if we go tomorrow

2. Often used with the conditional are some "compounded" verb tenses, for example:

law ruHt, kunt waṣalt daHHiin.	If I had gone, I would have arrived [by] now.
law 9irift, kunt gultalak.	If I had known, I would have told you.

For this tense, a form of /kaan/ is used with the perfect verb. It is also used as the "past perfect":

kaan raaH.	He had gone.
kaan giidu raaH.	He had already gone.
as-saa9a talaata, kunt kammalt ad-dars.	At three o'clock, I had finished the lesson.

The future form, /Ha-yikuun/, may be used with the perfect verb to form the "future perfect":

H-akuun ruHt.	I will have gone.
Ha-nikuun waṣalna.	We will have arrived.
as-saa9a talaata H-akuun kammalt ad-dars.	At three o'clock, I will have finished the lesson.

4. Areas in a house are:

ṣaala	entrance area
ghurfat al-juluus	living room
ṣaloon	guests' receiving room
ghurfat as-sufra	dining room
ghurfat an-noom	bedroom
maṭbax	kitchen

صالة  
غرفة الجلوس  
صالون  
غرفة السفرة  
غرفة النوم  
مطبخ

Hammaam  
siib, asyaab  
dulaab, dawaaliib  
balakoona, -aat  
garaaj  
jineena, janaayin

bathroom  
hall  
closet  
balcony  
garage  
garden

حمام  
سيب اسباب  
دولااب دواليب  
يلكونة -ات  
كراج  
جنيئة جنابن

Vocabulary Notes

asta'jar, yista'jir  
mustasfa, -yaat\*  
šagga, šugag

rent  
hospital  
apartment

استأجر يستأجر  
مستشفى -يات  
شقة شقق

\*This word is masculine.

Drills

1. I want to rent an  
apartment.

abgha asta'jir šagga.

ابغى استأجر شقة.

Substitute:

a room  
a house  
a big house  
a three-bedroom apartment  
a house near the embassy  
a house on Mecca Road  
a small apartment

2. If you (m) want a  
house...

iza tiHubb beet...

إذا تحب بيت...

Substitute:

another apartment  
you (m) find  
we find  
we need  
a bigger house  
a prettier house  
they need  
they buy  
I buy  
I want  
you (f) want  
you (m) want

3. My rent is at company  
expense.

iijaari 9ala Hisaab  
aš-šarika.

ايجاري على حساب  
الشركة.

Substitute:

government expense  
my expense  
my ticket  
their expense  
company expense  
our room  
our gasoline  
my car's gasoline  
government expense  
my rent

4. The kitchen is small. al-maṭbax ṣaḡhiir.

المطبخ صغير

Substitute:

the closets  
the living room  
the children's bedroom  
the dining room  
large  
the balcony  
the kitchen  
the bathroom

5. Is there airconditioning? fii takyiif?

فيه تكييف؟

Substitute:

a big garage  
enough closets  
a school nearby  
a hospital nearby  
a balcony  
a place for my books  
an address  
airconditioning

Situations

1.
  - A. Will you rent a house here?
  - B. If my family arrives next month, I'll rent one. If they don't come, I'll wait.
  - A. Rent ('the rent') is expensive here.
  - B. Yes, many foreigners have come in the last two years, and there aren't any apartments or houses free.
  
2.
  - A. I need an apartment with (/b-/) airconditioning.
  - B. How many bedrooms?
  - A. Two are enough. And my wife wants a large kitchen and a balcony.
  - B. I know a new building. I forgot the address, but it is the tallest one, right behind the hospital.
  - A. Good. If I had known, I would have asked before this.

## LESSON 42

Dialogue

window	šubbaak	شباك
A. Put the chair [over] there, next to the window.	Huṭṭ al-kursi hinaak, jamb aš-šubbaak.	حط الكرسي هناك، جنب الشباك.
sofa	kanaba	كنبه
B. And the sofa?	w al-kanaba?	والكنبه؟
wall	jadur	جدر
A. The sofa and tables by that wall.	al-kanaba w aṭ-ṭarabiizaat jamb haada l-jadur.	الكنبه والطريقات جنب هادا الجدر.
B. I was going to put them by the door.	kunt H-aHuṭṭahum jamb al-baab.	كنت حاطهم جنب الباب.
idea	fikra	فكرة
I prefer	afaḍḍil	افضل
A. That's a good idea, but I prefer that they be here.	haadi fikra ṭayyiba, laakin afaḍḍil innahum yikuunu hina.	هادي فكرة طيبة لآكن أفضل انهم يكونوا هنا.
mood, opinion	keef	كيف
box, trunk	šanduug	صندوق
ma'am ('my lady')	sitti	ستي
B. As you (f) wish, ma'am. And this box?	9ala keefik ya sitti. wu haada š-šanduug?	على كيفك يا ستي، وهاذا الصندوق؟
dog	kalb	كلب
garden	Hooš*	حوش
A. That's the dog's box. Back in the garden.	haada šanduug al-kalb. wara fil-Hooš.	هاذا صندوق الكلب، ورا في الحوش.

\*This word alternates with /jineena/.

Structure Sentences

1. She was going to ask him.	kaanat Ha-tis'alu.	كانت حنساله .
2. That's a bad idea.	haadi fikra baṭṭaala.	هادي فكرة بطالة.
3. That's quite a good ('not bad') idea.	haadi fikra mahi baṭṭaala.	هادي فكرة مهي بطالة.
4. We prefer to leave after the evening [prayer].	nifaḍḍil nimsi ba9d al-9iša.	نفضل نمشي بعد العشا.

5. This is the cat's food. haada akl al-bissa. عادا اكل البسة.  
 6. I have an idea. 9indi fikra. عندي فكرة.

Grammatical Notes

1. To express 'was going to', 'was planning to', use the perfect of /kaan/ with a future verb:

kunt H-aruuH. I was going to go.  
 kaanat Ha-tis'alu. She was going to ask him.

2. /faḍḍal, yifaḍḍil/ may be used as a helping verb with other verbs (cf. Structure Sentence 4).

3. This is a summary of all the verb tenses introduced:

Summary of Tenses

(Lesson 4)	Perfect	Suffixes:	-∅ -at -u  -t -ti -tu  -t -na
(Lesson 5)	Imperfect	Prefixes:	y- t- y- -u  t- t- -i t- -u  a- n-
(Lesson 14)	Future	Use /Ha-/ or /raH-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 15)	Affirmative Command	Use second-person imperfect form, minus the /t-/ prefix.	
(Lesson 22)	Habitual	Use imperfect, or /b-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 22)	Present Perfect	Use a form of /giid-/, or the active participle.	
(Lesson 25)	Present Progressive (continuous)	Use /b-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 25)	Past Progressive	Use /kaan/ + imperfect, or /kaan/ + /b-/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 27)	Negative Command	Use /laa/ + imperfect.	
(Lesson 36)	Ongoing Action	Use /9ammaal/ + imperfect.	

- (Lesson 41) Past Perfect Use /kaan/ + perfect.  
 Future Perfect Use/Ha-yikuun/ + perfect.
- (Lesson 42) "Was Going to" Use /kaan/ + future.  
 (intention)

Vocabulary Notes

kanaba, -aat  
 sariir, surur  
 sujjaada, sajaajiid  
 šubbaak, šabaabiik  
 jadur, judraan  
 šanduug, šanaadiig  
 tallaaaja, -aat  
 sitaara, sataayir

fikra, afkaar  
 kalb, -a, kilaab  
 bisaa, bisas

baṭṭaal, -a, -iin  
 faḍḍaal, yifaḍḍil

sofa  
 bed  
 carpet, rug  
 window  
 wall  
 box, trunk  
 refrigerator  
 curtain, drapery

idea  
 dog  
 cat

bad  
 prefer

كنبه -ات  
 سرير  
 سجادة سجاجيد  
 شباك شبايبك  
 جدر جدران  
 صندوق صناديق  
 ثلاجة -ات  
 ستارة ستاير

فكرة افكار  
 كلب كلاب  
 بسة بسس

بطلال -ين  
 فضل بفضل

Drills

1. Put the chair next to the window.

Huṭṭ al-kursi jamb aš-šubbaak.

حط الكرسي جنب الشباك

Substitute:

the sofa  
 the table  
 next to the wall  
 the bed  
 the rug  
 next to the door  
 the refrigerator  
 next to the window  
 the chair

2. I was going to put them by the door.

kunt H-aHuṭṭahum jamb al-baab.

كنت حاضهم جنب الباب

Substitute:

[over] there  
 to bring them  
 to bring it (m)  
 she was  
 we were  
 in the car  
 take it (f)  
 put it (f)  
 I was  
 by the door

3. She was going to ask him.

kaanat Ha-tis'alu.

كانت حنساله

Substitute:

asked  
will ask  
had asked  
will have asked  
wanted to ask  
must ask  
was going to ask

4. That's a good idea.

haadi fikra tayyiba.

هاري فكرة طيبة.

Substitute:

bad  
wrong  
not bad  
accurate  
plan  
project  
good  
bad  
situation  
difficult  
good  
idea

5. I prefer that they  
be here.

afaɗɗil innahum yikuuru hina.

افضل انهم  
يكونوا هنا.

Substitute:

he  
we  
they  
preferred  
you (m)  
it (m)  
someplace else (/fi makaan taani/)  
I  
in another room  
in the kitchen  
here

6. That's the dog's box.

haada sanduug al-kalb.

هاري صندوق الكلب

Substitute:

food  
the cat's  
room  
bed  
box  
the dog's

### Situations

- 1.
- A. I prefer a large house because I have three children, a dog, and a cat.
- B. You brought a dog and cat with you to the Kingdom?
- A. Of course. They're very important. They have been with us for a long time.
- B. If I had a dog or a cat, I would have left it in America.

- 2.
- A. Clean (f) the walls and then the refrigerator.
  - B. And the rug?
  - A. No, the rug later. The kitchen is more important now.
  - B. When are the people coming?
  - A. They're coming tonight. Don't forget to clean the windows in the living room.
  - B. As you (f) wish.
- 3.
- A. I want to buy something sweet for dinner.
  - B. Baklawa is good--foreigners like it.
  - A. Good idea. But I prefer ice cream (/ays kriim/).
  - B. Shall I buy it now?\*
  - A. Yes, buy about a kilo.
  - B. OK, I have enough change.

\*When you hear a foreign word, if it ends in /a-/, treat it as feminine; if not, as masculine. In this case, /ays kriim/ would be masculine.

Culture Notes

1. Saudis may own pets but most do not. They are often surprised by the affection lavished upon pets by foreigners. When Saudis visit an American's home, they usually do not appreciate having pets around. It is not considered appropriate for a dog to live inside the house.



LESSON 43

Dialogue

(At the post office)

I send	arsil	ارسل
air (adjective)	jawwi	جوي
registered	musajjal	مسجل
A. I want to mail ('send') a letter to America, airmail and registered.	abgha arsil jawaab li-amriika, bariid jawwi wu musajjal.	ابغى ارسل جواب لا مريكا، بريد جوي ومسجل
stamps	ṭawaabi9	طابع
B. Its weight is heavy. Four riyals for stamps.	waznu tagiil. arba9a riyaal liṭ-ṭawaabi9.	وزنه ثقيل. اربعة ريال للطابع
I translate	atarjim	انترجم
A. I want to translate this address.	abgha atarjim haada l-9inwaan.	ابغى انترجم هادا العنوان
I help (with)	asaa9id (fi)	اساعد (في)
translation	tarjama	ترجمة
B. I'll help you with the translation.	ana asaa9idak fit-tarjama.	انا اساعدك في الترجمة
I just	duubi	دوبي
I sent	arsalt	ارسلت
package	ṭard	طرد
A. I just sent a package. When will it arrive?	ana duubi arsalt ṭard. mita yiwṣal?	انا دوبي ارسلت طرد. متى يوصل؟
probability	iḥtimaal	احتمال
B. Probably ('the probabi- lity') in two weeks.	iḥtimaal ba9d usbuu9een.	احتمال بعد اسبوعين

Structure Sentences

1. I want to send a letter regular mail.	abgha arsil jawaab bariid 9aadi.	ابغى ارسل جواب بريد عادي
2. Put the stamp on the envelope.	Huṭṭ at-ṭaaba9 9ala ṭ-ṭarf.	حط الطابع على الطرف
3. This is an official letter.	haada jawaab rasmi.	هادا جواب رسمي
4. This is diplomatic mail.	haada bariid diblumaasi.	هادا بريد دبلوماسي

5. I need an interpreter. ana miHtaaĵ li-mutarĵim. أنا محتاج المترجم.  
 6. He just arrived. huwwa duubu waṣal. هو دونه وصل.

Grammatical Notes

1. The word /duub-/ is used before another verb to mean 'just', in the sense of recently completing an action. It is conjugated for persons:

duubu	he just	دونه
duubaha	she just	دونها
duubahum	they just	دونهم
duubak	you (m) just	دورك
duubik	you (f) just	دورك
duubakum	you (p) just	دوكنم
duubi	I just	دوين
duubana	we just	دوننا
duubi arsalt ṭard.	I just sent a package.	
duubu waṣal.	He just arrived.	

An alternative word in common use for 'just' is /taww-/. It is also used with pronoun endings: /tawwu/, /tawwaha/, /tawwi/, etc.

Vocabulary Notes

ṭaaba9, ṭawaabi9	stamp	طابع
ṭard, ṭuruud	package	حزمة
ṣarf, ṣuruuf	envelope	خطبة
mutarĵim, -a, -iin	interpreter	مترجم -ين
tarĵam, yitarĵim	interpret	ترجم
saa9ad, yisaa9id (fi)	help	يساعد (في)
arsal, yirsil	send	ارسل

Drills

1. I want to mail a letter to America, airmail. abgha arsil jawaab li-amriika, bariid jawwi. ابغى ارسل جواب لأمريكا بريد جوي.

Substitute:

- registered
- regular mail
- quickly
- in this envelope
- diplomatic mail
- official mail
- at government expense

2. I want to translate this address. abgha atarĵim haada l-9inwaan. ابغى اترجم هادا العنوان.

Substitute:

- this letter
- this note
- she
- this book

the lesson  
he  
this address  
his name

3. I'll help you with the translation.      ana asaa9idak fi t-tarjama.

انا اساعدك في الترجمة.

Substitute:

the work  
the writing  
the lesson  
the address  
the food  
the project  
the translation

4. I just sent a package.      ana duubi arsalt țard.

انا دوبي ارسلت طرد.

Substitute:

he  
you (m)  
we  
you (p)  
she  
they  
I

5. He just arrived.      huwwa duubu wa9al.

هو دويه وصل.

Substitute:

she  
went  
wrote to him  
they  
spent the money  
we  
I  
requested a taxi  
she  
he  
arrived

### Situations

1.
  - A. Where is my interpreter?
  - B. He just went home.
  - A. Unbelievable! I told him that I need him tonight.
  - B. Never mind, I'll help you with the interpreting.
2.
  - A. Did you write to the director?
  - B. Yes, I sent the letter this morning from the post office. Airmail and registered.
  - A. I hope it arrives quickly.
  - B. I asked the employee and he said there is a probability that it will be on a plane today.

3.  
A. Let's translate this together.  
B. OK, if I can find my pen and notebook.  
A. On the table beside the green chair.  
B. Can you bring them for me?  
A. The letter concerns (/9an/) our plan for the new building.  
B. I'm sure it's important.

LESSON 44

Dialogue

	to you (m), for you (m)	bak	بَك
A.	What's wrong with you?	eeš bak?	ايشر بك؟
	head	raas	راس
	it (f) hurts	tuja9	توجع
B.	I'm a little "tired". My head hurts me.	ana ta9baan šwayya. raasi tuja9ni.	انا تعبان شويه . راسي توجعني .
A.	I hope you're better soon.	salaamatak.	سلامتك .
B.	Thank you. I wanted to go to the university but I won't be able to.	aļļaah yisallimak. kunt abgha aruuH al-jaam9a laakin ma H-aqdar.	الله يسلمك . كنت ايفس اروح الجامعة لآكن ما حاقدار .
	you (m) rest	tistariiH	تستريح
A.	Never mind. You (m) have to rest.	ma9aleeš. laazim tistariiH.	معلينز . لازم تستريح .
B.	Can you do me a favor?	mumkin ti9milli xidma?	ممكن تعملي خدمة؟
	gladly	ibšer	ايشر
A.	Gladly, what? ('say')	ibšer. guul.	ايشر . قول .
	medicine	dawa	دوا
	pharmacy	šaydaliyya	صيدلية
B.	Buy me this medicine at the pharmacy.	ištiriili haada d-dawa min aš-šaydaliyya.	اشتريلي هادا الدوا من الصيدلية .

Structure Sentences

1.	What's wrong with you (m)?	eeš bik?	ايشر بك؟
2.	My head hurts (me).	qahri yuja9ni.	ظهري يوجعني .
3.	My stomach hurts.	baṭni tuja9ni.	بطني توجعني .
4.	He should have come before this; he had to come before this.	kaan laazim yiḡi gabl kida.	كان لازم يڡي قبل
5.	I wanted yesterday.	astaraḡt ams.	استرحت امس .
6.	Other than that, we were happy.	gheer kida, kunna mabsuuṭiin.	غير كده كنا مبسوطين .

Grammatical Notes

1. /eeš bak?/ is used to mean 'What's [wrong] with you?' and is conjugated:

eeš bak?	What's wrong with you (m)?
eeš bik?	What's wrong with you (f)?
eeš bakum?	What's wrong with you (p)?
eeš buh?	What's wrong with him?
eeš baha?	What's wrong with her?
eeš bahum?	What's wrong with them?

A variation of this is /eeš fiik/, /eeš fiiki/, etc.

2. Parts of the body may be grammatically masculine or feminine. Generally, two-member parts are feminine, and one-member parts are masculine (although this varies):

raas (m. or f.)	head
ḡahr (m)	back
baṭn (f)	stomach
iid, yadeen* (f)	hand
diraaḡ, diraaḡeen (f)	arm
rijl, rujuul (f)	foot
saag, saageen (f)	leg
ḡeen, ḡuyuun (f)	eye

رأس  
ظهر  
بطن  
يد  
ذراع  
رجل  
ساق  
عين

\*Note that some "plural" forms are in fact dual. Also note that /yadeen/ alternates with /iideen/, introduced in Lesson 37.

yadeenu	his hands
yadeenaha	her hands
yadeenahum	their hands
yadeenak	your (m) hands
yadeenik	your (f) hands
yadeenakum	your (p) hands
yadeeni	my hands
yadeena	our hands
rujuulu	his feet
rujuulaha	her feet
rujuuli	my feet
(etc.)	
ḡuyuunu	his eyes
ḡuyuunaha	her eyes
ḡuyuuni	my eyes
(etc.)	

3. /kaan/ in the perfect tense can be combined with some verbs in the imperfect tense. With verbs, it is conjugated for person:

kunt abgha aruuH.	I wanted to go.
kaanat tibgha tiji.	She wanted to come.

With modal words like /laazim/ and /mumkin/, /kaan/ may or may not be conjugated (it varies with different speakers). (See also Lesson 29).

kaan laazim aji.	I had to come; I should have come.
kunt laazim aji.	I had to come; I should have come.
kaan mumkin aji.	I was able to come.
kunt mumkin aji.	I was able to come.

4. /ibser/, 'gladly', 'certainly', is used when responding to a request for a favor.

5. /kida/, 'like that', may be used idiomatically:

gab1 kida	before that	قبل كده
ba9d kida	after that	بعد كده
ma9a kida	in spite of that, nevertheless	مع كده
gheer kida	other than that	غير كده
zayy kida	like that	زي كده

Vocabulary Notes

waja9, yuja9	hurt	وجع
astaraaH, yistariiH	rest	استراح
dawa, adwiya*	medicine	دوا ادوية

\*This word is masculine.

Drills

1. What's wrong with you (m)?      ees bak?      ايش بك؟

Substitute:

- you (f)
- them
- her
- you (p)
- him
- you (m)

2. My head hurts (me).      raasi tuja9ni.      راسي توجعني

Substitute:

- my back
- my leg
- my foot
- my stomach
- my arm
- my eyes
- my hand
- my head

3. I wanted to go to the university.      kunt abgha aruuH al-jaam9a.      كنت ابغى اروح الجامعة

Substitute:

- I had to go
- I had to return

to the airport  
 I could have returned ('it was possible that I return')  
 he could have returned  
 he could have visited  
 he wanted to visit  
 he wanted to see  
 the university  
 I wanted to see  
 I wanted to go

4. He should have come before this.      kaan laazim yiji gabl kida.

كان لازم يجي قبل

Substitute:

he could have come  
 he could have left  
 after that  
 he wanted to leave  
 I  
 she  
 she had to leave  
 she had to finish  
 before that  
 we  
 he  
 he had to come

5. Other than that, we were gheer kida, kunna mabsuutiin.  
 happy.

غير كده كنا  
 مبسوطين

Substitute:

before that  
 after that  
 nevertheless  
 other than that

Situations

1.
  - A. Hello. What's wrong with you (m)?
  - B. I don't know. I'm a little tired.
  - A. Maybe you need a rest.
  - B. Yes, I'll try. My back hurts.
  - A. "I hope you're better soon."
  - B. "Thanks."
2.
  - A. I'm sorry, I'm wrong.
  - B. Never mind. It's not important.
  - A. I should have asked the boss first.
  - B. Next time.
  - A. Nevertheless, nobody is angry.
3.
  - A. How are you today?
  - B. My head still hurts. Other than that, I'm much better.
  - A. Thank God. All your friends send their greetings.
  - B. "Thanks." Can you do me a favor?
  - A. Gladly.
  - B. Give me the medicine which I left on the table.



LESSON 45

Dialogue

during	xilaal	خلال
vacation	9uṭla	عطلة
Eid (Moslem holiday)	9iid	عيد
A. What did you (p) do during the Eid vacation?	eeṣ sawweetu xilaal 9uṭlat al-9iid?	ايشر سويتوا خلال عطلة العيد؟
guests	ḡuyuuf	ضيوف
Europe	urubba	اروبا
B. We had guests from Europe.	kaan 9indana ḡuyuuf min urubba.	كان عندنا ضيوف من اوروبا.
party	Hafla	حفلة
A. Can you (p) honor us at a party tomorrow night?	mumkin tiṣarrifuuna fi Hafla bukra fil-leel?	ممكن تشرفونا في حفلة بكرة في الليل؟
B. I think so.	aḡunn kida.	اظن كده.
well ('in goodness')	b-xeer	بخير
A. Have a good holiday. ('May you (p) be well every year')	kull 9aam w intu b-xeer.	كل عام وانتو بخير.
B. You too. ('And you (p) are of the same group')	w intu min ahlu.	وانتو من اهله.

Structure Sentences

1. Christmas vacation begins next week.	9uṭlat 9iid al-miilaad tibda' al-usbuu9 al-jayy.	عطلة عيد الميلاد تبدأ الاسبوع الجي.
2. Our family will travel on National Day.	9eelatna Ha-tisaafir fil-9iid al-waṭani.	عيلتنا حتسافر في العيد الوطني.
3. We have guests from Africa.	9indana ḡuyuuf min afriqya.	عندنا ضيوف من افريقيا.
4. Can you (m) honor us at a reception ('reception party')?	mumkin tiṣarrifna fi Haflat istigbaal?	ممكن تشرفنا في حفلة استقبال؟
5. I want to invite you to a party.	abgha a9zimak 9ala Hafla.	ايمنى اعزمتك على حفلة.
6. I have a meeting tonight.	9indi ijtimaat al-leela.	عندي اجتماع الليلة.

Grammatical Notes

1. Some holidays are:

(Moslem)	al-9iid al-kabiir (9iid al-aḡHa)	Big Eid (Feast of Sacrifice)	العید الكبير (عيد الأضحى)
	al-9iid aṣ-ṣaḡhiir (9iid al-fiṭir)	Little Eid (Feast of Breaking the Fast)	العید الصغير (عيد الفطر)
	mawlid an-nabi	The Prophet's Birthday	مولد النبي
(Christian and American)	9iid al-miilaad	Christmas	عيد الميلاد
	9iid al-giyaama	Easter	عيد القيامة
	9iid aṣ-ṣukr	Thanksgiving	عيد الشكر
	9iid al-istiqlaal	Independence Day	عيد الاستقلال
(Other)	al-9iid al-waṭani	National Day	العید الوطني

2. The continents are:

urubba	Europe	اروپا
aasya	Asia	اسيا
afriyya	Africa	افريقيا
amriika ṣ-samaaliyya	North America	امريكا الشمالية
amriika l-januubiyya	South America	امريكا الجنوبية

3. On the occasion of any annual holiday or commemoration (religious, national, one's birthday), the following expression is used:

kull 9aam w intu b-xeer. May you (p) be well every year.  
 (inta) (you (m))  
 (inti) (you (f))

The response is:

w intu min ahlu. And you (p) are of the same group.  
 (inta) (you (m))  
 (inti) (you (f))

Vocabulary Notes

9uṭla, 9uṭal	vacation	عطلة
9iid, a9yaad	holiday, Eid	عيد اعياد
ḡeef, ḡuyuuf	guest	ضيف ضيوف
Hafla, Hafalaat	party	حفلة -ات
istigbaal, -aat	reception	استقبال -ات
ijtimaa9, -aat	meeting	اجتماع -ات
bada', yibda'	begin	بدأ يبدأ
9azam, yi9zim (9ala)	invite	عزم يحزم (على)

Drills

1. What did you (p) do during the Eid vacation?  
 eeṣ sawweetu xilaal 9uṭlat al-9iid?  
 ايض سويتوا خلال عطلة العيد؟

Substitute:

during Christmas vacation  
 during the summer vacation  
 on National Day  
 on Independence Day  
 on your (m) birthday  
 on the Prophet's birthday  
 on Easter  
 on Thanksgiving  
 during the Eid vacation

2. We had guests from Europe.

kaan 9indana q̣uyuuf min urubba.

كان عندنا ضيوف من اوروبا.

Substitute:

Africa  
 North America  
 Asia  
 South America  
 Europe

3. (a man to a man)

kull 9aam w inta b-xeer. → w inta min ahlu. • كل عام وانت بخير. ← وانت من اهله •

Repeat the exchange, between the following groups of persons:

(a man to a woman)  
 (a man to a group)  
 (a woman to a group)  
 (a woman to a woman)  
 (a group to a woman)  
 (a group to a man)  
 (a man to a man)

4. Christmas vacation begins next week.

9uṭlat 9iid al-miilaad tibda'  
al-usbuu9 al-jayy.

عطلة عيد الميلاد تبدأ الاسبوع الجي.

Substitute:

(the) summer vacation  
 my work  
 the university  
 we  
 they  
 (the) school  
 the project  
 Thanksgiving vacation

5. I have a meeting tonight.

9indi ijtimaa9 al-leela.

عندي اجتماع الليلة.

Substitute:

a party  
 a reception  
 the ambassador's reception  
 an official party  
 an official meeting  
 a diplomatic reception  
 three parties  
 a meeting

6. I want to invite you (m) abgha a9zimak 9ala Hafla. ابغى اعزماك على حفلة.  
to a party.

Substitute:

we want  
she wants  
to invite them  
to invite him  
he wants  
to invite me  
to invite us  
they want  
to invite you (f)  
to invite you (m)  
I want

Situations

1.  
A. Can you (p) honor us at a reception?  
B. Gladly. Where?  
A. At our house, the day after tomorrow about eight o'clock.  
B. May I bring guests with me?  
A. Of course, welcome.  
B. I'll tell them.  
A. Goodby.  
B. Goodby.
2.  
A. Today is my birthday.  
B. "Happy Birthday". (use annual greeting)  
A. "Thank you".  
B. How old are you?  
A. 30. My wife invites you to a party tonight.  
B. What time does it start?  
A. After dinner.
3.  
A. Where will you go during your vacation?  
B. I and my family are traveling ('will travel') to Africa.  
A. I hope you like Africa.  
B. We have many friends who invited us.  
A. People from the State Department?  
B. Yes, all of them.

LESSON 46

Dialogue

democracy, democratic	dimuqraaṭiyya	ديموقراطية
two parties (political)	Hizbeen	حزبين
republican	jumhuuri	جمهوري
A. The American government is a democracy. We have two political parties, the Democratic and the Republican.	Hukuumat amriika dimuqraaṭiyya. 9indana Hizbeen, ad-dimuqraaṭi w al-jumhuuri.	حكومة امريكا ديموقراطية. عندنا حزبين، الديمقراطي والجمهوري.
monarchy	malakiyya	ملكية
similarly	kazaalik	كذلك
B. Here in Saudi Arabia, the government is a monarchy. It's the same ('similarly') in Jordan.	hina fis-su9uudiyya, al-Hukuuma malakiyya. kazaalik fil-urdun.	هنا في السعودية الحكومة ملكية. كذلك الاردن.
republic	jumhuuriyya	جمهورية
A. But Egypt is a republic.	laakin maṣur jumhuuriyya.	لاكن مصر جمهورية.
system	niṣaam	نظام
socialist	iṣṭiraaki	اشتراكي
B. Yes, it has ('in it') a socialist system.	iiwa, fiiha niṣaam iṣṭiraaki.	ايوه، فيها نظام اشتراكي.
politics	as-siyaasa	السياسة
A. Do you like to talk about politics?	tiHubb titkallam 9an as-siyaasa?	تحب تتكلم عن السياسة؟
newspapers	jaraayid	جرايد
magazines	majallaat	مجلات
international ('wordly')	9aalami	عالي
B. Yes, very much. I read the international newspapers and magazines everyday.	illa, katiir. agra l-jaraayid wal-majallaat al-9aalamiyya kull yoom.	الا كثير. اقرا الجرايد والمجلات العالمية كل يوم.

Structure Sentences

1. Communism is important in Russia.	aṣ-ṣuyuu9iyya muhimma fi ruusya.	الشيوعية مهمة في روسيا.
2. The Arab governments are against Zionism.	al-Hukuumaat al-9arabiyya ḡidd aṣ-ṣahyuuniyya.	الحكومات العربية ضد الصهيونية.

- |  |   |                               |
|--|---|-------------------------------|
| 3. He is a Zionist from Israel.            | huwwa ṣahyuuni min isra'iil.            | هو صهيوني من إسرائيل.         |
| 4. My country is a republic.               | baladi jumhuuriyya.                     | بلدي جمهورية.                 |
| 5. This article is from a Saudi newspaper. | haadi l-magaala min jariida su9uudiyya. | هادي المقالة من جريدة سعودية. |
| 6. Do you have the new "Time" magazine?    | 9indak majallat "Time" al-jadiida?      | عندك مجلة تايم الجديدة؟       |

Grammatical Notes

1. Certain types of "abstract" nouns are formed with the suffix /-iyya/ added to a word stem. Some common ones relating to politics are:

dimuqraaṭiyya	democracy	ديموقراطية
malakiyya	monarchy	ملكية
iṣṭiraakiyya	socialism	اشتراكية
ṣuyuu9iyya	communism	شيوعية
qawmiyya	nationalism	قومية
jumhuuriyya	republic	جمهورية
ṣahyuuniyya	Zionism	صهيونية

The adjective derived from this type of noun has the endings /-i/, (/ -iyya/, /-yiin/):

dimuqraaṭi	democratic
jumhuuri	republican
iṣṭiraaki	socialist
siyaasi	political
(etc.)	

2. Abstract nouns (of any type) are almost always used with the definite article /al-/ in Arabic, but this is not translated into English:

tiHubb titkallam 9an as-siyaasa?	Do you like to talk about politics?
aṣ-ṣuyuu9iyya muhimma fi-ruusya.	Communism is important in Russia.
al-Hukuumaat al-9arabiyya qidd aṣ-ṣahyuuniyya.	The Arab governments are against Zionism.

Statements which generalize about an idea usually have the definite article /al-/ with the noun, which is not the case in English.

In past lessons:

mamnuu9 al-xuruuj.	Exiting is forbidden.
..li'ann aṣ-ṣeef jayy	..because summer is coming
al-iijaar ghaali hina.	Rent is expensive here.
al-fuluus muhimma.	Money is important.
atkallamna 9an at-ta9liim waṣ-ṣiHHa.	We discussed education and health.
wu fi ta9liim al-banaat?	And in girls' education?

Other examples:

al-kiimya şa9ba.	Chemistry is difficult.
al-banziin raxiiş.	Gasoline is cheap.
aş-şihHa muhimma.	Health is important.
al-akl as-su9uudi ti9im.	Saudi food is delicious.

Vocabulary Notes

Hizb, aHzaab	(political) party	حزب احزاب
nižaam, nužum	system	نظام نظم
jariida, jaraayid	newspaper	جريدة جراید
majalla, -aat	magazine	مجلة -ات
siyaasa, -aat	policy; politics	سیاسة -ات
balad, bilaad (buldaan)*	country	بلد بلاد (بلدان)

\*/balad/ or /bilaad/ may mean 'country'. At the same time, /bilaad/ and /buldaan/ may be the plural, 'countries'.

dimuqraaṭi, -yiin	democratic	ديموقراطي -بين
jumhuuri, -yiin	republican	جمهوري -بين
siyaasi, -yiin	political	سياسي -بين
malaki, -yiin	monarchist	ملكي -بين
ištiraaki, -yiin	socialist	اشتراكي -بين
şuyuu9i, -iin	communist	شيوعي -بين
9aalami, -yiin	international	عالمي -بين
şahyuuni, -yiin	Zionist	صهيوني -بين
isra'iili, -yiin	Israeli	اسرائيلي -بين

Drills

1. The American government is a democracy.	al-Hukuuma l-amrikiyya <u>dimuqraaṭiyya.</u>	الحكومة الامريكية ديموقراطية
--	---	---------------------------------

Substitute:

German  
French  
Italian  
my  
monarchy  
Saudi  
English  
Jordanian  
the government of my country  
socialist  
Egyptian  
Sudanese  
this government  
communist  
Russian

2. Egypt has a socialist system.	<u>maşur fiiha nižaam ištiraaki.</u>	مصر فيها نظام اشتراكي
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------

Substitute:

the United States (democratic)  
Russia (communist)  
Saudi Arabia (monarchist)  
Libya (nationalist)  
Israel (Zionist)

Lebanon (democratic)  
Japan (democratic)  
Egypt (socialist)

3. Do you like to talk  
about politics?

tiHubb titkallam 9an  
as-siyaasa?

نحب نتكلم عن السياسة؟

Substitute:

she  
about the government  
about Zionism  
they  
about their country  
about socialism and communism  
he  
about political parties  
about the Democratic party  
about the Republican party  
about Israel's politics  
you (f)  
about the newspapers  
about Arab politics  
about political systems

4. I read the international  
newspapers.

agra al-jaraayid al-  
9aalamiyya.

اقرا الجرايد العالمية.

Substitute:

American  
magazines  
international  
German  
Arab  
newspapers  
Saudi

5. The Arab governments are  
against Zionism.

al-Hukuumaat al-9arabiyya  
qidd aṣ-ṣahyuuniyya.

الحكومات العربية  
ضد الصهيونية.

Substitute:

Israel  
this policy  
this idea  
I  
all of us  
this plan  
these plans  
these policies  
Russia's policy  
your (p) policy

6. He is a Zionist from  
Israel.

huwwa ṣahyuuni min  
isra'iiil.

هو صهيوني من اسرائيل.

Substitute:

Europe  
communist  
socialist



Italy  
America  
Democrat  
Republican

Situations

1.
  - A. What is the political system in the Arab countries?
  - B. There are many systems--monarchist socialist, and democratic.
  - A. And communist?
  - B. No, there is no communism.
  
2.
  - A. Have you seen today's paper?
  - B. Yes, I read the article about Zionism and Arab nationalism.
  - A. I know the man who wrote it.
  - B. I think he writes for a Saudi newspaper and an international newspaper as well (/kazaalik/), right?
  - A. Yes, and he writes the best political articles.
  
3.
  - A. There is a reception at the embassy tonight. Are you going?
  - B. Maybe, I'm not sure. I have guests.
  - A. Have them come with you.
  - B. I'll try. Why is there a party?
  - A. It's National Day.
  - B. Oh, yes, I forgot.

## LESSON 47

Dialogue

Ramadan	ramaḍaan	رمضان
A. Tomorrow Ramadan begins.	bukra yibda' šahar ramaḍaan.	بكرة يبدأ شهر رمضان.
they fast	yiṣuumu	يصوموا
all ('the length of')	ṭuul	طول
even	Hatta	حتى
B. Yes, all the Moslems will fast all month. They don't eat and don't drink and don't even smoke cigarettes.	iiwa, kull al-muslimiin Ha-yiṣuumu ṭuul aš-šahar. ma yaaklu wala yišrabu wu Hatta ma yišrabu sajaayir.	ايوه، كل المسلمين حينصوموا طول الشهر. ما ياكلوا ولا يشربوا وحتى ما يشربوا سجاير.
pillars, tenets	arkaan	اركان
religion	diin	دين
Islamic	islaami	اسلامي
A. I know that there are five "pillars" in the Islamic religion.	a9rif innu fii xamsa arkaan fid-diin al-islaami.	اعرف انه فيه خمسة اركان في الدين الاسلامي.
declaration of faith	aš-šahaada	الشهادة
prayer	as-šalaa	الصلاة
alms	az-zakaa	الزكاة
fasting	aš-šoom	الصوم
pilgrimage (to Mecca)	al-Hajj	الحج
B. Yes, the five pillars are: the declaration of faith prayer, almsgiving, fasting, and the pilgrimage.	al-arkaan al-xamsa humma: aš-šahaada, aš-šalaa, az-zakaa, aš-šoom, wal-Hajj.	الاركان الخمسة هم: الشهادة، الصلاة، الزكاة، الصوم، والحج.

Structure Sentences

1. I have to pray the sunset [prayer].	laazim ašalli l-maghrib.*	لازم اصلي المغرب
2. Alms are two and one-half per cent.	az-zakaa itneen wu nuṣṣ fil-miyya.	الزكاة اثنين ونص في المية.
3. The declaration of faith is: [There is] no god but God and Muhammad is the Messenger of God.	aš-šahaada hiyya: laa ilaaha illa llaah wu muhammad rasuul allaah.	الشهادة هي: لا اله الا الله ومحمد رسول الله.

\*the full expressions would be /šalaat al-maghrib/, 'the evening prayer'.

4. I didn't even see my family.      Hatta ma šuft ahli.      حتى ما شفت اهلي.
5. Even he knows.      Hatta huwwa yi9rif.      حتى هو يعرف

Grammatical Notes

1. The Islamic months are:

muHarram  
šafar  
rabii9 al-awwal  
rabii9 at-taani  
jumaad al-awwal  
jumaad at-taani  
rajab  
ša9baan  
ramađaan  
šawwaal  
zu l-gi9da  
zu l-Hijja

محرم  
صفر  
ربيع الاول  
ربيع الثاني  
جماد الاول  
جماد الثاني  
رجب  
شعبان  
رمضان  
شوال  
ذو القعدة  
ذو الحجة

They are calculated according to a lunar system, which means that the Islamic year is eleven days shorter than the Western year. The calendar begins with the year 1 corresponding to 622 A.D., the date on which the Prophet Muhammad emigrated from Mecca to Medina. This emigration is called /al-Hijra/ in Arabic, and thus an Islamic date is referred to as /Hijri/, often abbreviated in English as A.H., while a date in the Western calendar is called /miilaadi/(referring to the birth of Jesus). Each lunar month begins with the new moon.

ana mawluud 9aam 1367 Hijri fi šahar ša9baan.  
I was born in 1367 A.H. in the month of Shaban.

ana mawluud 9aam 1949 miilaadi fi šahar maaris.  
I was born in 1949 A.D. in the month of March.

2. Note the use of /tuul an-nahaar/, 'all day long' (literally, 'the length of the daytime'), as opposed to /kull yoom/, 'every day'. /tuul/ may be used with other time words:

tuul aš-šahar	all month
tuul as-sana	all year
tuul al-usbuu9	all week

3. /širib/, 'to drink', is used idiomatically to mean 'to smoke':

ma yišrabu sajaayir.      They don't smoke cigarettes.

The verb /daxxan, yidaxxin/ is also commonly used to mean 'smoke'; its verbal noun is /tadxiin/:

ma adaxxin.	I don't smoke.
ma ašrab sajaayir.	I don't smoke.
mamnuu9 at-tadxiin.	No smoking.

4. /Hatta/ is used with an affirmative verb to mean 'even', and with a negative verb to mean 'not even':

Hatta huwwa yi9rif.	Even he knows.
Hatta dafa9t al-fuluus.	I even paid the money.

Hatta ma yiṣrabu  
sajaayir. They don't even smoke  
cigarettes.  
Hatta ma šuft ahli. I didn't even see my  
family.  
Hatta ma Ha-niHaawil. We're not even going  
to try.

5. Major religions are:

al-islam	Islam	الاسلام
al-masiiHiyya	Christianity	المسيحية
al-yahuudiyya	Judaism	اليهودية
al-buudiyya	Buddhism	اليودية
al-hinduusiyya	Hinduism	الهندوسية

A follower of each religion is referred to as:

muslim, -a, -iin	Moslem	مسلم -ين
masiiHi, -iyya, -yiin	Christian	مسيحي -يين
yahuudi, -iyya, -yiin*	Jew	يهودي (يهود)
buudi, -iyya, -yiin	Buddhist	بودي -يين
hinduusi, -iyya, -yiin	Hindu	هندوسي -يين

\*/yahuud/ is another plural; it is more classical.

A follower of a religion other than the first three, or an atheist or a pagan, may be referred to as /kaafir/ (-a, -iin), 'unbeliever'.

Vocabulary Notes

diin, adyaan	religion	دين اديان
rukṅ, arkaan	pillar, support	ركن ارکان
šaam, yišuum (šumt)	fast	صام يصوم (صمت)
šalla, yišalli (šalleet)	pray	صلى يصلي (صليت)
daxxan, yidaxxin	smoke	دخن يدخن

Drills

1. They don't even smoke cigarettes. Hatta ma yiṣrabu sajaayir. حتى اا بشرهوا سجاير.

Substitute:

šaahi  
moyya  
sajaayir  
yidaxxin  
yištari  
akl  
yaakul  
šayy

2. Even he knows.

Hatta huwwa yi9rif. حتى هو يعرف

Substitute:

I  
they  
went  
she  
came with us

doesn't know  
 you (f)  
 must return  
 you (p)  
 were going to forget  
 I  
 he  
 knows

3. I have to pray the sunset [prayer].

laazim aşalli l-maghrib.  
 (or: /şalaat al-maghrib/)

لازم اصلي المغرب

Substitute:

he  
 we  
 the evening prayer  
 the dawn prayer  
 they  
 the Moslems  
 all year  
 the afternoon prayer  
 the noon prayer  
 the people  
 the merchants  
 I  
 the Friday prayer  
 the sunset prayer

4. Tomorrow Ramadan begins.

bukra yibda' şahar ramađaan.

بكرة يبدأ شهر رمضان

Substitute:

muHarram  
 şafar  
 rabii9 al-awwal  
 rabii9 at-taani  
 jumaad al-awwal  
 jumaad at-taani  
 rajab  
 şa9baan  
 ramađaan  
 şawwaal  
 zu l-gi9d  
 zu l-Hijja

محرم  
 صفر  
 ربيع الاول  
 ربيع الثاني  
 جماد الاول  
 جماد الثاني  
 رجب  
 شعبان  
 رمضان  
 شوال  
 ذو القعدة  
 ذو الحجة

5. Complete the sentence:

[One] of the five pillars in the Islamic religion [is]:

min al-arkan al-xamsa fid-diin al-islami:

من الاركان الخمسة في الدين الاسلامي:

the declaration of faith  
 prayer  
 alms [giving]  
 fasting  
 pilgrimage

Situations

1.
  - A. What are you studying now in your history book?
  - B. We're studying religions of the world.
  - A. You mean (/ya9ni/) Islam and Christianity?
  - B. Yes, and Judaism, Buddhism, and Hinduism as well (/kazaalik/).
  - A. Do you like the book?
  - B. Very much. It's the best book I've read about history.
  
2.
  - A. Why are the shops closed?
  - B. For the evening prayer. They will open again in a little while.
  - A. Shall we wait here?
  - B. Let's stand here ten minutes because I haven't even bought the things  
[which] I want.
  - A. Do the shops close like this (/kida/) every day?
  - B. Yes, and of course they are closed all day on Friday.

LESSON 48

Dialogue

built	mabni	مبني
exporting	taşdiir	تصدير
oil	naft	نفت
A. The economy of the Kingdom is built on the exporting of oil.	iqtisaad al-mamlaka mabni 9ala taşdiir an-naft.	اقتصاد المملكة مبني على تصدير النفط.
we export	nişaddir	نصدر
we import	nistawrid	نستورد
majority	mu9qam	معظم
needs, necessities	Haajaat	حاجات
B. Yes, we export oil and important most of our needs from abroad.	iiwa, nişaddir al-baṭrool wu nistawrid mu9qam Haajaatana min barra.	ايوه، نصدر البترول ونستورد معظم حاجاتنا من برا.
for example	masalan	مثلا
A. What, for example?	eeş masalan?	ايش مثلا؟
types	anwaa9	انواع
equipment ('equipments')	ajhiza	اجهزة
B. For example, cars and food and many types of equipment.	masalan sayyaaraat w akl w anwaa9 ajhiza katiir.	مثلا سيارات واكل وانواع اجهزة كثير
goods	biḡaa9a	بضاعة
imported (f)	mistawrida	مستوردة
world	9aalam	عالم
A. I saw goods imported from all the countries of the world.	ana şuft biḡaa9a mistawrida min kull buldaan al-9aalam.	انا شفت بضاعة مستوردة من كل بلدان العالم.
especially	xuşuuşan	خصوصا
B. Especially Europe and Japan.	xuşuuşan urubba w al-yabaan.	خصوصا اوروبا واليابان.

Structure Sentences

1. The Kingdom produces 7 million barrels of oil every day.	al-mamlaka tintij sab9a malyoon barmiil naft kull yoom.	المملكة تنتج سبعة مليون برميل نفت كل يوم.
---	---	---

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| 2. There are many oil companies in Saudi Arabia and in the Arabian Gulf. | fii šarikaat baṭrool<br>katiir fis-su9uudiyya<br>wu fil-xaliij al-9arabi. | فيه شركات بترول<br>كثير في السعودية<br>وفي الخليج العربي. |
| 3. The oil embargo happened after the Ramadan War in 1972.               | man9 al-baṭrool šaar ba9d<br>Harb ramaḏaan sanat<br>itneen wu sab9iin.    | منع البترول صار بعد<br>حرب رمضان سنة<br>اثنين وسبعين.     |
| 4. Most of the oil wells are in the Eastern Region.                      | mu9ḡam aabaar az-zeet fil-<br>manṡiga š-šargiyya.                         | معظم آبار الزيت<br>في المنطقة الشرقية.                    |

Grammatical Notes

1. Three terms are used for 'oil': /naft/ is the classical word and is often used when referring to unrefined oil. /zeet/ is the more colloquial word, and means everything from cooking oil to industrial oil. /baṭrool/ is a newly-borrowed word, and usually refers to petroleum or refined oil.

2. /mu9ḡam/, 'most', 'a majority of', is used with a plural noun in a construct state:

mu9ḡam Haajaatana mu9ḡam an-naas muslimiin.	most of our needs The majority of the people are Moslems.
---	---

Vocabulary Notes

mabni, -iyya, -yiin	built	مبنى - بين
tašdiir	exporting	تصدير
istiiraad	importing	استيراد
Haaja, -aat	need, necessity	حاجة - ات
jihaaz, ajhiza	equipment	جهاز اجهزة
barmiil, baraamiil	barrell	برميل براميل
Harb, Huruub*	war	حرب حروب
biir, aabaar	well	بئر آبار
nuu9, anwaa9	type	نوع انواع
šaddar, yišaddir	export	صدر يصدر
astawrad, yistawrid	import	استورد يستورد
antaj, yintij	produce	انتج ينتج
šaar, yišiiir	happen	صار يصير

\*This word is feminine.

Drills

- |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1. We export oil and import most of our needs. | nišaddir al-baṭrool wu<br>nistawrid mu9ḡam<br>Haajaatana. | نصدر البترول<br>ونستورد معظم<br>حاجاتنا. |
|--|---|--|

Continue, substituting the following pairs of words:

cars - food  
books - international newspapers  
food - equipment  
coffee - medicine  
sugar - airplanes  
fabrics - shoes  
meat - fruit  
oil - most of our needs



2. The Kingdom produces  
7 million barrels  
of oil every day.

al-mamlaka tintij  
sab9a malyoon  
barmil naft kull  
yoom.

المملكة تنتج سبعة مليون  
برميل نفط كل يوم

Substitute:

the Gulf  
America  
produces much equipment  
airplanes  
France  
many kinds of goods  
buys  
Japan  
oil from the Middle East  
fabrics  
produces  
cars  
the Kingdom  
7 million barrels of oil every day

3. Answer the question:

When did you visit the Kingdom?      mita zurt al-mamlaka?

متا زرت المملكة؟

after the oil embargo  
before the Ramadan War  
in 1972  
after Ramadan  
during Hajj month  
after the big Eid  
during the winter vacation

4. Most of the oil wells  
are in the Eastern  
Region.

mu9am aabaar az-zeet fil-  
manfiqa s-sargiyya.

معظم آبار الزيت  
في المنطقة الشرقية.

Substitute:

companies  
in the Hijaz  
people  
cities  
the Najd  
the bedouins  
the ministers  
the foreigners  
the Eastern Region  
the oil companies  
the oil wells

Situations

1.
  - A. We want to invite you to a meeting next week at the Ministry of Petroleum.
  - B. OK, let me talk to the director.
  - A. Is he back from the Eastern Region?
  - B. He returned last night from visiting ('a visit to') the oil wells there.
2.
  - A. I read an article in a magazine about the oil embargo of ('in the year of') 1972.

- B. Yes, the oil embargo occurred after the war.  
A. Which countries in the Middle East export oil?  
B. The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia, the Arabian Gulf, Iraq and Iran (/iiraan/) export most of the oil. The economy of the Kingdom is built on oil.
3.  
A. Do you (p) like to talk about international politics?  
B. Oh, of course. Especially politics and economics of the Middle East.  
A. The Middle East has become very important to ('in') the world.  
B. Yes, because this area produces oil and because of the political situation as well.

LESSON 49

Dialogue

case	gaḍiyya	تضية
A. I read in the paper about the Palestine matter ('case').	giriit fil-jariida 9an gaḍiyyat falastāiin.	قرئت في الجريدة عن قضية فلسطين.
problem	muṣkila	مشكلة
problems	maṣaakil	مشاكل
international	duwali	دولي
B. This problem is [one] of the most important international political problems.	haadi l-muṣkila min ahamm al-maṣaakil as-siyaasiyya d-duwaliyya.	هادي المشكلة من اهم المشاكل السياسية الدولية.
A. They say that there may be ('arise') another war between the Arabs and Israel.	yiguulu innu mumkin tiguum Harb taanya been al-9arab w isra'iil.	يقولوا انه ممكن تقوم حرب ثانية بين العرب واسرائيل.
at least	9ala l-agall	على الاقل
fedayeen	fidaa'iyiin	فدائيين
they fight	yiHaaribu	يحاربوا
withdraws (f)	tinsaHib	تسحب
lands	araaḍi	اراضي
occupied (f)	muHtalla	محتلة
B. Or at least, the fedayeen will fight until Israel withdraws from the occupied territories.	aw 9ala l-agall, al-fidaa'iyiin Ha-yiHaaribu ileen isra'iil tinsaHib min al-araaḍi l-muHtalla.	او على الاقل الفدائيين يحاربوا الين اسرائيل تسحب من الاراضي المحتلة.
A. Among them [are] the city of Jerusalem and Sinai and the West Bank.	minhum madiinat al-guds wu siina w aḍ-ḍiffa l-gharbiyya.	منهم مدينة القدس وسينا والضفة الغربية.

Structure Sentences

1. The Second World War broke out in 1939..	gaamat al-Harb al-9aalamiyya t-taanya sanat tis9a wu talaatiin.	قامت الحرب العالمية الثانية سنة تسعة وثلاثين.
2. And "the War of the Setback" was in 1967.	wu Harb an-naksa kaanat fi sanat sab9a wu sittiin.	وحرب النكسة كانت في سنة سبعة وستين.
3. Keep that between me and you.	xalli haada beeni wu beenak.	خل هادا بيني وبينك.

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 4. At least we solved the problem.                              | 9ala l-agall, Halleena<br>l-muškila.                          | على الأقل حلينا<br>المشكلة.                 |
| 5. Do you (p) want a political solution or a military solution? | tibghu Hall siyaasi walla<br>Hall 9askari?                    | تبنوا حل سياسي<br>ولا حل عسكري؟             |
| 6. They discussed the Palestine matter in the United Nations.   | atkallamu 9an gađiyyat<br>falasřiin fil-umam<br>al-muttaHida. | اتكلموا عن قضية فلسطين<br>في الأمم المتحدة. |
| 7. There are negotiations between the two sides.                | fii mufaawađaat been<br>ař-řarafeen.                          | فيه مفاوضات بين الطرفين.                    |

Grammatical Notes

1. To express 'one of the most' with an adjective, use /min/ with the comparative adjective:

min ahamm al-mařaakil	one of the most important problems
min akbar ar-rijaal	one of the oldest men

2. The verb /gaam/, 'to stand', is used idiomatically with /Harb/ to mean 'to break out', 'to arise', 'to occur'.

3. /been/, 'between', 'among', is sometimes used twice if two sides are mentioned. If pronouns are used, they are suffixed to the word:

beeni wu beenak	between me and you
beeni wu been aHmad	between me and Ahmad
been al-9arab wu isra'iil	between the Arabs and Israel
been al-9arab wu been isra'iil	between the Arabs and Israel

Vocabulary Notes

gađiyya, gađaaya	case, matter	قضية قضايا
muškila, mařaakil	problem	مشكلة مشاكل
arđ, araađi*	land, territory	ارض اراضي
điffa, đifaaf	bank (of a river)	ضفة ضفاف
umma, umam	nation	امة امم
fidaa'i, -iyya, -yiin	freedom fighter, commando	فدائي -يين
řaraf, ařraaf	side	طرف اطراف
9askari, -iyya, -yiin	military	عسكري -يين
duwali -iyya	international	دولي
Haarab, yiHaarib	fight	حارب يحارب
ansaHab, yinsaHib	withdraw	انسحب ينسحب

\*This word is feminine.

Drills

1. I read in the paper                    ana giriit fil-jariida                    انا قرئت في الجريدة  
about the Palestine                    9an gaḍiyyat falastiin.                    عن قضية فلسطين  
matter.

Substitute:

the Six-Day War ("War of the Setback")  
the 1967 War  
the negotiations between the Arabs and Israel  
the occupied lands  
the West Bank  
the solution to ('of') the problem  
World War II  
the United Nations  
the official policy

2. This problem is [one]                    haadi l-muškila min ahamm                    هادي المشكلة من اهم  
of the most im-                    al-masaakil.                    المشاكل  
portant problems.

Substitute:

one of the biggest problems  
one of the smallest problems  
this matter  
one of the most important matters  
these negotiations  
[some] of the longest meetings  
[some] of the nicest meetings  
[some] of the most important meetings  
[some] of the most important problems  
this problem

3. They say that there                    yiguulu innu mumkin                    يقولوا انه ممكن تقوم حرب  
may be a war.                    tiguum Harb.

Substitute:

the negotiations may begin  
the United Nations may have ('make') a meeting  
the king may change the policy  
the commandos may fight  
Israel may withdraw from the occupied territories  
the government may close the airport  
the princes may travel to the Eastern Region  
the director may ask for a translation  
he may send the letter registered  
a war may break out

4. The fedayeen will                    al-fidaa'iyiin Ha-yiHaaribu                    الفدائيين حيااربوا  
fight until Israel                    ileen isra'ii tinsaHib                    الين اسرائيل تنسحب  
withdraws from the                    min al-araaḍi l-muHtalla.                    من الاراضي المحتلة  
occupied territories.

Substitute:

until next year  
will come to the meetings  
will try  
until they find a political solution  
until they return to Jerusalem



LESSON 50

Review selected dialogues. Practice them using other persons, also changing tenses and changing the number of nouns.

Supplementary Drills

1. Given the following sentences, change the verbs to future tense:

giri l-jariida.	قري الجديدة.
ruHna li şaaHibna.	نحننا لها حينا.
akalat al-burtukaana.	أكلت البورتكاانة.
aštareet saa9a jadiida.	اشتريت ساعة جديدة.
saafaru wu şaafu l-jabal.	سافروا وشافوا الجبل.
ana tarjamt al-jawaab.	انا ترجمت الجواب.
nađđafna s-sayyaara l-beeđa.	نظفنا السيارة البيضاء.
iidi waja9atni.	أيدي وجمعتني.
aHmad sallam 9aleek.	أحمد سلم عليك.
gafalu l-madrasa.	قولوا المدرسة.
sa'al su'aal.	سأل سؤال.
raddeet 9ala l-mudarris.	رددت على المدرسين.
daxal wara l-9imaara.	دخل وراء العمارة.
as-si9r ma9guul.	السمر معقول.
al-ustaaz ma kaan mawjuud.	الأستاذ ما كان موجود.
aštahal sawwaag taksi.	اشتغل سواق تسي.

Repeat the drill, changing the nouns to plural.

2. Given the sentence, repeat it using an active participle instead of a verb:

axuuya raaH al-madrasa.	اخوي راح المدرسة.
şarafat fuluus katiir.	درقت فلوس كثير.
şaaf an-naxil.	شاف النخل.
dafa9 al-Hisaab.	رفح الحساب.
simi9na l-kalaam.	سمعنا الكلام.
ţalabt minnu musaa9ada.	طلبت منه مساعدة.
axuuya saag sayyaarati.	اخوي ساق سيارتي.
waşalna l-Hafla badri.	وصلنا الحفلة بدرتي.
xaraju mit'axxiriin.	خرجوا متأخرين.
mişi ma9aahum.	مشي معاهم.
al-awlaad namu fi ghurfat an-noom.	الأولاد ناموا في غرفة النوم.

3. I have to rent a house. laazim asta'jir beet.

لازم استأجر بيت.

Substitute:

- buy a new sofa
- import the fabric from America
- find another refrigerator
- see the oil wells some time
- solve this problem
- visit Jerusalem at Easter
- rest all day
- leave a tip for the waiter
- study about communism and socialism in East Europe
- travel to the Arabian Gulf
- see my family during the summer vacation
- buy medicine at the pharmacy
- clean the curtains in the living room
- take my daughter to the hospital
- greet the guests
- invite them to (/9ala/) dinner

4. I read in the paper  
about the matter.

giriit fil-jariida 9an  
al-gaḍiyya.

قرئت في الجريدة عن  
القضية.

Substitute:

World War I  
the oil embargo  
the Hindu religion  
Arab nationalism  
the monarchist system  
the minister's reception at the airport  
the importing and exporting of goods in Arabia  
the probability of another war  
the new apparatus which the company bought  
the meetings at the United Nations  
the negotiations between the two sides  
the five pillars of ('in') Islam  
the occupied territories

5. We didn't go because  
we were tired.

ma ruHna li'ann kunna  
ta9baaniin.

ما رحنا لأن كنا تعبانيين.

we forgot  
my head hurt  
we had gone before [that]  
he didn't invite us  
we had already bought fruits and vegetables  
we didn't need anything  
we didn't want to eat again  
because of the rain  
I wanted to sew  
the children had to go to school  
we didn't have a vacation this year

#### Narratives

1. Thank you, I'm honored to be here in your home. Your home is beautiful, here and in the garden. The food is delicious--bless your hands. That's enough--OK, only a little [more]. Thanks be to God. May your table always be thus. The fruit is [so] fresh--from where did you buy it? I was in the souk this morning but I didn't see fruit like this. The prices are so high now, maybe because it's winter and everything is imported from far [away].

2. This is the first time I've gone to a tailor to have a suit made ('make a suit'). He's very good. I asked for a cotton jacket like my old one ('the old one of mine'). Only I want the sleeves narrow--that's a good idea, isn't it? You should ('must') come with me the next time in order to meet the tailor. He also makes shirts and even ties. He's not expensive at all and his shop is near the center of town.

3. I read many international newspapers and magazines because I like to know about international politics, especially the politics of the Middle East. I have been working in Saudi Arabia for about two years, and I traveled to most of the Arab countries in this period. I don't understand the Palestine problem well, but I hope there is a solution soon, if possible. I agree with the government that after four wars in the area, a political solution and not a military [one] is best.



APPENDIX A

Specialized Vocabulary

1. Titles of Nobility

His Majesty (the King) 'owner of majesty'	jalaalat al-malik ṣaaHib al-jalaala	جلالة الملك صاحب الجلالة
Her Majesty (the Queen) 'owner of majesty'	jalaalat al-malika ṣaaHibat al-jalaala	جلالة الملكة صاحبة الجلالة
His Royal Highness (the Prince) 'owner of royal high- ness'	sumuww al-maliki al-amiir ṣaaHib as-sumuww al-maliki	سمو الملكي الامير صاحب السمو الملكي
His Highness (the Prince) (Princess) 'owner of highness'	sumuww al-amiir (amiira) ṣaaHib as-sumuww (ṣaaHiba)	سمو الامير (اميرة) صاحب السمو (صاحبة)
The Crown Prince '[May God] lengthen your life' (said to royalty)	waliyy al-9ahd ṭaal 9umrak (9umrik)	ولي العهد طال عمره (عمره)
'[May God] lengthen his (her) life' (said about royalty)	ṭaal 9umru (9umraha)	طال عمره (عمرها)
His Excellency (the minister, the am- bassador)	sa9aadat (al-waziir, as-safiir)	سعادة (الوزير، السفير)

2. Military

weapon, arms	silaaH, asliHa	سلاح اسلحة
training	tadriib	تدريب
soldier	9askari, 9asaakir	عسكري عساكر
officer	ṣaabiṭ, ṣubbaaṭ	ضابط ضباط
army	al-jeeṣ	الجيش
navy	al-baHariyya	البحرية
air force	silaaH aṭ-ṭayaraan	سلاح الطيران
ship	baaxira, bawaaxir	باخرة باواخر
port	miina, mawaani	ميناء موانئ
Saudi Arabian National Guard	al-Haras al-waṭani as-su9uudi	الحرس الوطني السعودي
The American Mission	al-bi9sa l-amrikiyya	البعثة الامريكية
The Corps of Engineers	silaaH al-muhandisiin	سلاح المهندسين

3. Political

president	ra'iis, ru'asa	رئيس رؤسا
Senate	majlis aṣ-ṣuyuux	مجلس الشيوخ
House of Representatives	majlis an-nuwwaab	مجلس النواب
election	intixaabaat	انتخابات
to elect	antaxab, yintixib	انتخب ينتخب
to win	kasab, yiksab	كسب يكسب
to lose	xisir, yixsar	خسر يخسر
candidate	muraṣṣaH, -iin	مرشح -ين
citizen	muwaaṭin, -iin	مواطن -ين

citizenship	jinsiyya	جنسية
refugee	laaji', -iin	لاجئ -ين
majority	aktariyya	أكثرية
minority	aqalliyya	أقلية
<b>4. <u>Economic and Commercial</u></b>		
economic	iqtisaadi	اقتصادي
commercial	tujaari	تجاري
technology	tiknoloojiyya	تكنولوجية
technical	fanni	فني
industry	aş-şinaa9a	الصناعة
industrial	şinaa9i	صناعي
profit	faйда, fawaayid	فايدة فوايد
loss	xusaara, xasaayir	خسارة خسائر
capitalism	ra'smaaliyya	رأسمالية
program	barnaamij, baraamij	برنامج برامج
advisor	mustaşaar, -iin	مستشار -ين
permit	taşriih, taşaariih	تصريح تصريح
work permit	taşriih 9amal	تصريح عمل
license	ruxşa, ruxaş	رخصة رخص
driver's license	ruxşat siwaaga	رخصة سواقة
factory	maşna9, maşaani9	مصنع مصانع
production	intaaaj	إنتاج
consumption	istihlaak	استهلاك
consumer	mustahlik, -iin	مستهلك -ين
progress	taqaddum	تقدم
rich	ghani, aghniya	غني اغنيا
poor	fagiir, fugara	فقير فقرا
<b>5. <u>Law</u></b>		
law	qanuun, qawaaniin	قانون قوانين
lawyer	muHaami, -iin	محامي -ين
court	maHkama, maHaakim	محكمة محاكم
judge	qaaqi, qaḡaa	قاضي قضاة
crime	jariima, jaraayim	جريمة جرائم
criminal	mujrim, -iin	مجرم -ين
jail	sijn	سجن
<b>6. <u>Religion</u></b>		
mosque	jaami9, jawaami9*	جامع جوامع
church	kaniisa, kanaayis	كنيسة كنائس
temple	ma9bad, ma9aabid	معبد معابد
prophet	nabi, anbiya	نبي انبيا
'our master' (title for prophets)	sayyidna	سيدنا
religious authorities	9ulama	علماء
religious police	muṭawwi9, -iin	مطوع -ين
The Holy Koran	al-qur'aan al-kariim	القرآن الكريم
Holy Mecca ('the venerated')	makka l-mukarrama	مكة المكرمة
Holy Medina ('the lighted')	al-madiina l-munawwara	المدينة المنورة
lesser pilgrimage	al-9umra	العمرة

\*This word alternates with /masjid/.

7. Health

disease  
accident  
wound  
clinic  
operation  
analysis  
checkup  
shot  
nurse  
vaccination  
blood  
liver  
kidney  
stomach  
lung  
diarrhea  
dysentery  
fever  
measles  
mumps  
cancer  
tuberculosis  
cholera

maraq, amraaq  
Haadisa, Hawaadis  
jurH, jiraaH  
9iyaada, -aat  
9amaliyya, -aat  
taHliil, taHaaliil  
kaşf  
Hugna, Hugaan  
mumarriqa, -aat  
talgiih  
damm  
kabd  
kulya, kalaawi  
mi9da  
ri'a, -aat  
ishaal  
dizantaarya  
Humma  
al-Hasba  
an-nukaaf  
saraţaan  
as-sull  
al-kuliraa

مرض امراض  
حادثة حوادث  
جرح جراح  
عيادة -ات  
عملية -ات  
تحليل تحاليل  
كشف  
حقنة حقن  
ممرضة -ات  
تلقيح  
دم  
كبدا  
كلية كلاوى  
معدة  
رئة -ات  
أسهال  
رنتظاريا  
حمى  
الحصبة  
النكاف  
سرطان  
السل  
الكوليرا

8. Household Words

houseboy  
maid  
to cook  
refrigerator  
stove  
oven  
cupboard  
dish, dishes  
washer  
dryer  
electricity  
pan, pans (pots)  
platter, tray  
knife  
fork  
spoon  
to wash  
to shine  
to break  
clean  
dirty  
tablecloth, bedspread  
sheet  
blanket  
towel  
soap

şabi  
xaddaama  
ţabax, yuţbux  
tallaaja  
butagaaz  
furn  
dulaab, dawaaliib  
şahan, şuhuun  
ghassaala  
naşşaaafa  
kahraba  
gidir, guduur  
şiniyya, şawaani  
sikkiina, sakaakiin  
şooka, şuwak  
ma9laga, ma9aalig  
ghassal, yighassil  
massaH, yimassiH  
kassar, yikassir  
nađiif, nuđaaf  
wisix, -iin  
mafraq, mafaariş  
milaaya, -aat  
baţaniyya, baţaađiin  
manşafa, manaaşif  
şabuun

صبي  
خداامة  
طبخ يطبخ  
تلاجة  
بتغاز  
فرن  
دولاب دولاب  
سحن صحون  
غسالة  
نشافة  
كهربا  
قدر قدر  
صنبة صواني  
سكينة سكاكين  
شوك  
معلقة معالق  
غسل يغسل  
مسح يمسح  
نشر ينشر  
نظيف نظاف  
وسخ -ين  
مفرق مفاقرش  
ملاية -ات  
بطنية بطاطين  
منشفة مناشف  
صابون

## APPENDIX B

Social Expressions

In addition to expressions given in the text, there are many other occasions on which speech formulas are used, and some familiar expressions can also be elaborated upon. Most of these are religious in content. All the formulas will be presented in the masculine or plural form.

1. Hello and Goodby

Good evening. (men only)	masaak aḷḷaah bil-xeer.	مساك الله بالخير.
Goodby. ('God with you')	aḷḷaah ma9aak.	الله معاك.

2. Speaking of a Future Plan

May our Lord make it easy.	rabbana yisahhil.	ربنا يسهّل.
Our Lord with you.	rabbana ma9aak.	ربنا معاك.
God with you.	aḷḷaah ma9aak.	الله معاك.
With the permission of God.	b-izn illaah.	بإذن الله.

3. Giving Thanks

May God keep you for us. (usually said to a superior)	aḷḷaah yixalliik lana.	الله يخليك لنا.
[May God] increase your goodness.	kattar xeerak.	كثر خيرك.
May God preserve you.	aḷḷaah yiHfaḷak.	الله يحفظك.

4. Blessings

[It is] what God wills.	ma šaa' aḷḷaah.	ما شاء الله.
May God bless.	tabaarak aḷḷaah.	تبارك الله.
The name of God.	ism aḷḷaah.	اسم الله.
(At birth) May God keep him.	aḷḷaah yixallii.	الله يخليه.
(To the mother) Thank God for [your] safety.	al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama.	الحمد لله على السلامة.

5. Offering Food

Have some.	atfaḷḷal.	اتفضل.
(Response) To [your] strength.	bil-9aafiya.	بالمافية.

6. When Someone Compliments Your Food  
 To [your] happiness and health. bil-hana wu š-šifa. بالهنا والشفا.
7. After Someone Drinks  
 Healthful. hanii'an. منيثا.  
 (Response) May God give you happiness. hanaak aḷḷaah. هناك الله.
8. When Seeing Someone Working, or After He Has Completed A Task  
 May God give you strength. aḷḷaah ya9ṭiik al-9aafiya. الله يعطيك العافية.  
 (Response) May God strengthen you. aḷḷaah yi9aafiik. الله يعافيك.
9. Before Someone Takes a Trip  
 Bon voyage. ('With safety, if God wills') bis-salaama in šaa' aḷḷaah. بالسلامة ان شاء الله.  
 [May you] go and return with safety. tisaafir wu tirja9 bis-salaama. تسافر وترجع بالسلامة.  
 (Response) May God make you safe. aḷḷaah yisallimak. الله يسلمك.
10. Asking Pardon  
 No offense. la mu'axza. لا مؤاخذاة  
 (Response) Never mind. ma9aleeš. معليش.
11. When Someone Says "I have news for you" or "Guess what?"  
 [Let it be] good, if God wills. xeer, in šaa' aḷḷaah. خير ان شاء الله.
12. When Something is Broken  
 [It is] evil [which] was broken. ankasar aš-šarr. انكسر الشر.
13. Before Engaging in a Dangerous Task, or Waking Someone  
 In the name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate. bism ilaah ar-raḤmaan ar-raḤiim. بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم.
14. Expressing Uncertainty  
 [only] God knows. ('God is the most-knowing') aḷḷaahu a9lam. الله اعلم.
15. Wedding  
 Congratulations ('blessed'). mabruuk. مبروك.  
 [We await] the first-born. 9ugbaal al-bakaari. عقبال البكاري.

16. During Ramadan

Ramadan is generous. ramaḍaan kariim. رمضان كريم.

17. When Someone is Going on Pilgrimage

Blessed pilgrimage. Hajj mabruur. حج مبرور.

18. Speaking of Something Bad

May God not permit it. la samaH aḷḷaah. لا سمح الله.

[May it be] outside and distant. barra wu ba9iid. برا وبعيد.

19. When Facing a Difficult Situation

I take refuge in God. a9uuzu billaah. اعوذ بالله.

(Response) May God give you aid. aḷḷaah yikuun b-9uunak. الله يكون بموئتك.

20. Condolences for a Death

May God greaten your reward. 9aẓẓam aḷḷaah ajrak. عظم الله اجرک.

(Response) May God compensate you with good. jazaak aḷḷaah xeer. جزاك الله خير.

[May] the remainder [be added] to your life. al-baagiya fi Hayaatak. الباقية في حياتك.

(Response) And your life. wu fi Hayaatak. وفي حياتك.

21. When Speaking of a Dead Person

(Name), may God have mercy on him. aḷḷaah yirHamu. الله يرحمه.

The late (name). al-marHuum. المرحوم.

APPENDIX C

Gestures

Gestures are used in all societies to register reactions to people and events and to communicate messages silently. The gestures described below are used in the Hijaz region of Saudi Arabia, and represent only the most common ones. They include only those which are different from gestures used by Americans. (You will observe many other gestures identical for both Americans and Arabians.)

Much of this material was based on an article, "Arabic Gestures", by Robert A. Barakat, which appeared in the Journal of Popular Culture, Spring, 1973 (reprinted with permission).

1. Move the head slightly back and raise eyebrows: no.  
Move the head back and chin upward: no.  
Move the chin slightly back and make a clicking sound with the tongue: no.  
Open the right palm toward the other person, moving it from right to left: no.
2. After shaking hands, place the right hand to the heart: greeting with respect or sincerity.  
(Among women: place the right hand to the heart after offering food or drink: offering with sincerity.)
3. Kiss forehead, nose, or right hand of person who is being greeted: extreme respect.
4. Place the right hand on the heart, or pat the heart a few times: that's enough, thank you.
5. Hold the right hand out stiff, with palm down, and move it from left to right: never.
6. Hold open palms facing the other person: excellent.
7. Touch outer edge of eyes with fingertips: OK.
8. Hold right hand up and shake it: go away.
9. Touch tip of nose with tip of right forefinger: promise to do something.
10. Hold out right hand with palm down, move up and down slowly: quiet down.
11. Hold right forefinger in front of mouth and blow on it: be quiet.
12. Bite right forefinger which is placed sideways in mouth: shame!
13. Flick right thumbnail on front teeth: I have no money.

## APPENDIX D

Saudi Names

The Arab countries follow several systems in arriving at the composition of a person's name. And within one country, different social classes and religious groups may use different systems. In Saudi Arabia, the system is quite traditional and consistent.

Arab names reflect the genealogy on the father's side. Each person has a given name, and his (or her) "middle name" is that of the father. Thus, women have masculine middle names. The person's name may be followed by "ibn" (son) or "bint" (daughter) with the father's name (this is especially common in the eastern Arabian peninsula). Thus, a person's name may be recited as Muhammad ibn Ahmad ibn Mahmoud, or Habiba bint Ahmad.

Each family has its "family" name. This name identifies the large extended family whose members consider themselves tied by bonds of kinship and honor and who see the group as their main source of identification. Family names are often geographical: Al-Halaby (from Aleppo), Al-Makkawi (Meccan), Shami (Syrian); denote an occupation: Haddad (blacksmith), Najjar (carpenter); descriptive: Al-Asmar (dark-complected), Al-Badawi (Bedouin); tribal: Al-Harbi (from the Harb tribe), Al-Qahtani (from the Qahtan tribe); or sound like a personal name because they are the name of a common ancestor: Ibrahim, Hussein.

In the full form of a name, as used for legal purposes, a person may have more than one name in the middle, those of the grandfather, great-grandfather, etc., but these are omitted in daily use. For example, if a man's full name is:

Muhammad	Hasan	Ahmad	Al-Makkawi
(given)	(father)	(grandfather)	(family)

he may be called Muhammad Hasan on one occasion, or Muhammad Hasan Ahmad, as well as Muhammad Al-Makkawi.

To further complicate the picture, some people are given double names as their first name. In this case, the person usually chooses to "go by" one of his names, and the other shows up only in legal situations. A man known as Hussein Ibrahim could be really named Muhammad-Hussein Ibrahim (the name Muhammad is especially common as the first element of a doubled name). Most American employers double-check the names given by employees to be sure that they are complete, and they decide on a consistent naming practice.

In Saudi Arabia, it is common to address someone you have just met by his first name. (Notice that Saudis will often address you as Mr. John, Mr. Bill, etc.) Arabs often find it odd that Americans refer to each other by their last names.

A woman's name does not change after marriage, since she cannot, of course, take her husband's genealogy, which is what it would entail. Names, therefore, may give no clue whatsoever that two people are husband and wife. Socially, she may be referred to as "the wife of", using her husband's first name. For this reason, Saudis frequently refer to foreign women as Mrs. John, Mrs. Bill, etc.

After having children, parents are often referred to as "Abu" (father) and "Umm" (mother) of their eldest son. For example, a man may be called "Abu Hasan", if this is the name of his eldest son (he will be called after his eldest daughter if he has no sons). This is, of course, non-official. If such a name is used throughout a person's lifetime, it may become a family name in

I. For ease in reading, most names are spelled in a modified phonemic system, approximately the way Arabs spell their names in English.



time, referring to this ancestor, and this is sometimes heard as a form of family name. The use of "Umm" is very common for women, and it provides a more proper, less personal way of addressing a lady than by using her own name.

Arabs make frequent use of nicknames as well. The most common type of nickname is formed by repeating a consonant sound in the person's name, using a double syllable. Common nicknames may be Fifi, Susu, Bobo, Mimi, etc. These are most often used for women and small children, but not always. There is another set of "equivalent" nicknames (like William = Bill, Elizabeth = Betty in English), substituting a name with "Abu" plus another name (in this case, this does not describe a father-son relationship), for example: Hasan = Abu Ali, Omar = Abu Siraj.

There is also the use of titles. Common titles are Duktoor (doctor), Ustaaz (professor), Muhandis (engineer). Other titles frequently used are Hajj (for someone who has made the pilgrimage to Mecca), and titles of nobility.

A person's name can also be a clue to certain facts about him. Names may indicate religion, country or area of origin, and often, social status. This explains why persons may introduce themselves with various long combinations of names.

Most Arabic names are not religiously restricted, but some are, and may not be all that obvious. While all Saudis are Moslem, there are some non-Moslem Arabs living in the country. Only a few patterns emerge as guidelines:

(1) If the name sounds Western (George, Michael, Marie), it marks a Christian name.

(2) Moslems use names hyphenated with Abdel-, plus the attributes of God (Abdel-Rahman, Abdel-Karim, etc.).<sup>2</sup> Other names are in combination with the word Din (religion), or built on the roots H-m-d, H-s-n, and Sh-r-f (Ahmad, Hamid, Hasan, Sharif).

(3) Most names which refer to personal qualities or attributes are shared by all groups, such as Jamil (beautiful), Zaki (intelligent), Karim (generous).

The following lists of names are by no means exhaustive; they are some of the more common names.

---

2. Christians use this pattern with a few names: Abdel-Massih, Abdel-Malik, Abdel-Shahid.

Common Names

Men

Abdel- Names

Abdallah  
Abdel-Aziz  
Abdel-Fattah  
Abdel-Ghani  
Abdel-Hadi  
Abdel-Hakim  
Abdel-Halim  
Abdel-Jabbar  
Abdel-Karim  
Abdel-Latif  
Abdel-Majid  
Abdel-Rahman  
Abdel-Rauf  
Abdu

"Din" Names

Ala-Eddin  
Badr-Eddin  
Izz-Eddin  
Mohie-Eddin  
Salah-Eddin  
Shams-Eddin  
Sharaf-Eddin

H-m-d Names

Ahmad  
Hamad  
Hamid  
Hammady  
Hamud  
Mahmoud  
Muhammad

H-s-n Names

Hasan  
Hasanein  
Hassuna  
Hosny  
Hussein  
Mohsen

Sh-r-f Names

Ashraf  
Sharaf  
Sharif

Koranic, Biblical

Ayoub (Job)  
Daud (David)  
Ibrahim (Abraham)

Isa (Jesus)  
Ishaq (Isaac)  
Musa (Moses)  
Suleiman (Solomon)  
Yacoub (Jacob)  
Yehya (John)  
Younis (Jonah)  
Yousef (Joseph)

Other Names

Abbas  
Adel  
Adnan  
Akram  
Ali  
Amin  
Arif  
Bakri  
Bashir  
Basim  
Fahd  
Fakhri  
Faraj  
Farid  
Farouk  
Fawzi  
Fayez  
Faysal  
Fuad  
Ghasan  
Habib  
Hadi  
Hani  
Hashim  
Hatim  
Hisham  
Husam  
Ihab  
Isam  
Ismail  
Jabir  
Jafar  
Jalal  
Jamal  
Jamil  
Juma  
Kamal  
Karim  
Khalid  
Khalil  
Labib  
Mahir  
Majid  
Mamduh  
Mamoun  
Mansour

Mounib  
Mounir  
Muammar  
Mustafa  
Muwaffaq  
Nabil  
Naim  
Nasir  
Nuri  
Omar  
Qays  
Rafiq  
Ramadan  
Ramez  
Rashid  
Rauf  
Ridwan  
Rizk  
Saad  
Sadek  
Saïd  
Salah  
Salih  
Salim  
Sami  
Samir  
Saud  
Shafik  
Shukri  
Suhail  
Taha  
Tahir  
Talal  
Tariq  
Usama  
Wahib  
Wajih  
Yasin  
Yasir  
Zaki  
Zayad  
Zayd

Women

Often men's names are used, with /-a/ added to the end. Other names describe personal attributes, or are the names of historical persons.

-a Names

Amina  
 Aziza  
 Badia  
 Bahija  
 Basma  
 Farida  
 Habiba  
 Hadia  
 Jalila  
 Jamila  
 Karima  
 Majida  
 Mounira  
 Nadira  
 Nura  
 Rabia  
 Samia  
 Samiha  
 Samira  
 Sharifa  
 Wahiba  
 Zakiya

Other Names

Abla  
 Afaf  
 Ahlam  
 Aida  
 Amal  
 Ayesha  
 Azza  
 Dalal  
 Fatma  
 Fayruz  
 Hala  
 Hana  
 Hanan  
 Hawa  
 Hind  
 Hosna  
 Huda  
 Ibtisam  
 Inam  
 Insaf  
 Khadija  
 Layla

Lubna  
 Maha  
 Mayy  
 Miryam  
 Muna  
 Nadia  
 Najwa  
 Nawal  
 Nuha  
 Raja  
 Raqiya  
 Sabah  
 Safiya  
 Sahar  
 Sakina  
 Salma  
 Salwa  
 Sana  
 Sara  
 Suad  
 Shadiya  
 Thoraya  
 Wafa  
 Zahra  
 Zaynab

## GLOSSARY

Items in this glossary are arranged according to English alphabetical order, with the special symbols included as follows: a, b, d, đ, e, f, g, gh, h, H, i, j, k, l, m, n, q, r, s, š, š, t, ʔ, u, w, x, y, z, ʒ, 9.

Nouns and adjectives are presented in the masculine singular form, and the plural forms are parenthesized. A few nouns are given in the singular or plural form only, if the other is rare. Nouns which are usually used in the collective plural (foods, for example), are listed under this form.

The feminine form is regular, so it is not shown except for adjectives of color. If a noun is usually used with the article /al-/, it will be listed under the noun (for example, /as-suudaan/). Phrases are listed under the first item (for example, /ma9a l-asaf/). Some proper nouns are given, such as the names of countries, but names of cities are not given unless their pronunciation is very different from that of English.

Verbs are given in the 'he' form of the perfect tense, followed by the imperfect tense. If a verb is usually used with a preposition, this is given in parentheses.

## ARABIC -ENGLISH

aadaab	literature, humanities
aanisa	Miss
aasif (-iin)	sorry
aasya	Asia
aaxir (-iin)	last; end
abadan	never
abb	father
abriil	April
abyađ (beeđa) (beeđ)	white
ab9ad	further, more distant
adda, yiddi	to give
afriqya	Africa
agall	less
agdam	older
agrab	nearer
aqşar	shorter
aghla	more expensive
ahamm	more important
ahl	family, relatives, people

ahlan	welcome; hi
ahlan wu sahan	welcome
aHad	someone
al-aHad	Sunday
aHla	prettier
aHmar (Hamra) (Humur)	red
aHsan	better
ajadd	newer
ajmal	more beautiful
ajnabi (ajaanib)	foreigner
akal, yaakul	to eat
akbar	bigger
akl	food
aktar	more
alf (aalaaf)	thousand
al-Hiin	now
aHlaah	God
alli	which (non-interrogative)
almaani (almaan)	German (language, nationality)
almaanya	Germany
alHaf	nicer, more pleasant
amaan	safety
amiir (umara)	prince
amiira (-aat)	princess
amma	either; as for
amriika	America
amrikaani (amrikaan)	American
amriiki (-yiin)	American
ams	yesterday
ana	I
ansaHab, yinsaHib (min)	to withdraw
antaj, yintij	to produce

antaḡar, yintaḡir	to wait for
arba9a	four
arba9iin	forty
arba9ṡa9ṡ	fourteen
arḡ (araaḡi)	land
arsal, yirsil	to send
arxaṡ	cheaper
asbaani (asbaan)	Spaniard, Spanish
asbaanya	Spain
asta'jar, yista'jir	to rent
asta'zan, yista'zin	to take leave; ask permission
astanna, yistanna	to wait for
astaraaH, yistariiH	to rest
astawrad, yistawrid	to import
asta9jal, yista9jil	to hurry
asta9mal, yista9mil	to use
aswad (sooda) (suud)	black
as9ad	happier
aṡfar (ṡafra) (ṡufur)	yellow
aṡghar	smaller
aṡtaghal, yiṡtaghil	to work
aṡtara, yiṡtari	to buy
at'axxar, yit'axxir	to be late, delayed
atfaḡḡal	go ahead; sit down; have some
atḡal	heavier
atkallam, yitkallam	to speak
atmarran, yitmarran	to practice
atṡarraf, yitṡarrif	to be honored
at9allam, yit9allim	to be educated
at9arraf, yit9arrif (9ala)	to be introduced
at9awwad, yit9awwid (9ala)	to become accustomed

BASIC COURSE

aṭwal	longer
aṭyab	better
aw	or
awHaḡ	worse; uglier
awsa9	wider
awal	first; beginning
al-awal	firstly
awal ams	the day before yesterday
awal-ma (+ verb)	as soon as
axad, yaaxud	to take
axaff	more lightweight
axḡar (xaḡra) (xuḡur)	green
axx (axwaan)	brother
ayy?	which?
ayy	any
azrag (zarga) (zurg)	blue
a9taḡad, ya9taḡid	to believe
a9ṭa, yi9ṭi	to give
baab (abwaab)	door
al-baagi	the rest, remainder
baarid	cold
baa9, yibii9	to sell
bada', yibda'	to begin
badawi (badu)	Bedouin
badla (bidal)	suit
badri	early
bagar	cattle; beef
baggaal (-iin)	grocer
baglaawa	baklava pastry
baHr (buHuur)	sea
al-baHreen	Bahrein
bakaluryoos	Bachelor's degree

bala	without
balad (bilaad; buldaan)	country
balaH	red dates
balakoona (-aat)	balcony
balyoon (balaayiin)	billion
banafsaji	purple, violet
banṭaloon (-aat)	trousers
banziin	gasoline
bard	cold
bardaan (-iin)	cold
bariid	mail; post office
bariid jawwi	air mail
barmiil (baraamiil)	barrell
barra	outside; abroad
basboor (-ṭaaṭ)	passport
bass	only
baṣal	onions
baṭaaṭis	potatoes
baṭn	stomach, abdomen
baṭrool	petroleum
baṭṭaal (-iin)	bad
baxṣiiṣ	tip
bazaaliya	peas
ba9d	after
ba9d kida	after that
ba9deen	later
ba9ḍ	each other
ba9iid	far, distant
beeḍ	eggs
been	between
beet (buyuut)	house
bidinjaan	eggplant



biduun	without
biqaa9a	goods
biir (aabaar)	(oil) well
bil-heel	very much, extremely
bil-marra	very much, extremely
bint (banaat)	girl
bissa (bisas)	cat
biq-ḡabt	exactly
bluuza (-aat)	blouse
b-sur9a	quickly
b-ḡweeḡ	slowly
bukra	tomorrow
bunni	brown
burtukaan	oranges
burtukaani	orange (color)
buudi (-yiin)	Buddhist
buuḡa	inch
daaxili	interior, inner
daayim	eternal
dafa9, yidfa9	to pay
daftar (dafaatir)	notebook
dagiiga (dagaayig)	minute
daHHiin	now
dajaaḡ	chicken
daras, yidrus	to study
darras, yidarris	to teach
dars (duruus)	lesson
dasta (-aat)	dozen
dawa (adwiya)	medicine
dawwar, yidawwir (9ala)	to look for
daxal, yudxul	to enter
daxxal, yidaxxil	to cause to enter, bring in

daxxan, yidaxxin	to smoke
dayman	always
diblumaasi (-yiin)	diplomatic, diplomat
difaa9	defense
diin (adyaan)	religion
dimišq	Damascus
dimuqraaṭi (-yiin)	democrat, democratic
ad-dimuqraaṭiyya	democracy
diraasa (-aat)	study
diraa9 (-een)	arm
diri, yidri	to be aware
disambar	December
dukkaan (dakaakiin)	shop
duktoor (dakaatra)	doctor
dukturaa	Doctor's degree
dulaab (dawaaliib)	closet, cupboard
dulaar (-aat)	dollar
dunya	world
duub- (+ verb)	just
duwali	international
duxuul	entering
ḡahr	back
ḡariiba (ḡaraayib)	tax
ḡayyig	narrow
ḡeef (ḡuyuuf)	guest
ḡidd	against
ḡiffa (ḡifaaf)	bank (of river)
ḡuhur	noon
eeš	what?
faaḡi (-yiin)	free, empty
faṣuuliyya	beans
faḡḡal, yifaḡḡil	to prefer

fahham, yifahhim	to explain, help to understand
fajr	dawn
fakha (fawaakih)	fruit
fakk, yifukk	to take apart; change money
fakka	change (money)
falaṣṭiin	Palestine
fallaaH (-iin)	peasant farmer
faraansa	France
faransaawi (-yiin)	French (language, nationality)
faṣl (fuṣuul)	season, class
fataH, yiftaH	to open
faṭuur	breakfast
feen?	where?
fi	in
fibraayir	February
fidaa'i (-yiin)	freedom fighter, commandó
fii	there is, are
fikra (afkaar)	idea
filfil	pepper
fil-miyya	per cent
finjaan (fanaajiin)	cup
foog	up, above, upstairs
fundug (fanaadig)	hotel
furn	oven
furṣa (furaṣ)	opportunity, occasion
fustaan (fasaatiin)	dress
gaabal, yigaabil	to meet
gaal, yiguul	to say
gaam, yiguum	to get up, stand up
gaas, yigiis	to measure
gabl	before; since; ago

gabl kida	before that
gaḍam (agḍaam)	foot (measurement)
gaddeesh?	how much?
gadiim (gudum)	old
gaḍiyya (gaḍaaya)	case, matter
gafal, yigfil	to close
gahwa	coffee
gaḷam (aglaam)	pen
galiil (-iin)	few
gamiish (gumshaan)	shirt
garaaj	garage
gariib (-iin)	near; soon
garsh (guruush)	piastre
gaashiir (gushaar)	short
gaḡad, yugḡud	to sit
gidir, yigdar	to be able
giid- (+ verb)	already
giri, yigra	to read
gism (agsaam)	department
guddaam	in front of
al-guds	Jerusalem
gumaaish (agmiisha)	fabric
gunshuliyya (-aat)	consulate
guṭun	cotton
guzaaz	glass
ghaali (-yiin)	expensive
ghada	lunch
ghalaṭ	wrong
ghalṭaan (-iin)	wrong
gharb	west
ghayyar, yighayyir	to change
gheer kida	other than that

BASIC COURSE

---

ghraam	gram
ghurfa (ghuraf)	room
ghurfat al-intiḡaar	lobby, reception room
ghurfat al-juluus	living room
ghurfat an-noom	bedroom
ghurfat as-sufra	dining room
haada	this (m)
haadi	this (f)
hadaak	that (m)
hadiik	that (f)
hadolaak	those
hadool	these
halala	(unit of money)
handasa	engineering
hina	here
hinaak	there
hinduusi (-yiin)	Hindu
hiyya	she
humma	they
huwwa	he
Haaḡdir	very well, OK; ready
Haaja (-aat)	thing; need, necessity
Haal (aHwaal)	situation, condition
Haarab, yiHaarib	to fight, go to war
Haawal, yiHaawil	to try
Habb, yiHubb	to like, love; to want to
Habba	a piece, one
Haḡaana	nursery school, kindergarten
Haḡratak	you (honorific)
Hafla (Hafalaat)	party
Hagg (-oon)	belonging to

Hajj	the pilgrimage to Mecca
Hajz	reservation
Haliib	milk
Hamd	glory
Hammaal (-iin)	porter
Hammaam (-aat)	bathroom
Harb (Huruub)	war
Harr	hot; heat
Harraan (-iin)	hot
Hatta	even; until
Haṭṭ, yiHuṭṭ	to put
Hawaali	about, approximately
Hijaazi (-yiin)	Hijazi
Hijri	A.H. (Islamic calendar)
Hilu (-wiin)	pretty; sweet
Hisaab (-aat)	check, bill, account
Hizaam	belt
Hizb (aHzaab)	party (political)
Hood	sink
Hooṣ	garden
Hukuuma (-aat)	government
ibṣer	gladly, certainly
ibtidaa'i	elementary
iHḍa9ṣ	eleven
iHna	we
iHtimaal	probability
iid (yadeen)	hand
iijaar	rent
iiwa	yes
ijtimaa9 (-aat)	meeting
ijtimaa9i	social

ileen	until
illa	yes; minus
al-imaaraat	the Emirates
imtiHaan (-aat)	examination, test
in ʕaa' aʕʕaaah	if God wills
ingiliizi (ingiliiz)	English (language, nationality)
ingiltera	England
innu	that (conjunction)
inta	you (m)
inti	you (f)
intu	you (p)
iqtisaaad	economics
islaami	Islamic
ism (asaami)	name
isra'iil	Israel
isra'iili (-yiin)	Israeli
istiiraad	importing
istigbaal (-aat)	reception
iʕaara (-aat)	signal, traffic signal
iʕtiraaki	socialist
al-iʕtiraakiyya	socialism
itna9ʕ	twelve
itneen	two
al-itneen	Monday
ittifaag (-aat)	agreement
iʕaali (-yiin)	Italian
iza	if
izn	permission
i9daadi	intermediate
i9laam	information
jaab, yijiib	to bring
jaam9a (-aat)	university

jabal (jibaal)	mountain
jadiid (judud)	new
jadur (judraan)	wall
jakitta (-aat)	jacket
jalas, yijlis	to sit
jamb	beside
jamiil	beautiful
januub	south
jariida (jaraayid)	newspaper
jarraaH (-iin)	surgeon
jarrab, yijarrib	to try out
jawaab (-aat)	letter; answer
jawaaz (-aat) as-safar	passport
jawaazaat	passport control
jaww	weather
jayy (-iin)	coming, next
al-jazaayir	Algeria, Algiers
jazma (jizam)	shoes
jazzaar (-iin)	butcher
jeeš (juyuuš)	army
jiddan	very
jihaaz (ajhiza)	equipment, appliance, apparatus
jii9aan (-iin)	hungry
jild	leather, skin
jineena (janaayin)	garden
jughrafya	geography
jumhuuri	republican
jumhuuriyya	republic
jumla (jumal)	sentence
al-jum9a	Friday
juwwa	inside
kaafir (-iin)	unbeliever



BASIC COURSE

---

kaan, yikuun	to be
kabaab	shish kabob
kabiir (kubaar)	big
kalaam	speech
kalb (kilaab)	dog
kallaaf, yikallif	to cost
kallam, yikallim	to talk to
kam?	how many?
kamaan	too, also
kammal, yikammil	to finish
kanaba (-aat)	sofa
karafiṭṭa (-aat)	necktie
kart (kuruut)	card
katab, yiktub	to write
katiir	much, many
kazaalik	thus, as well
keef?	how?
kida	like that
kifaaya	enough
kiilu	kilo
kiimya	chemistry
kilma (kalimaat)	word
kitaab (kutub)	book
kitaaba	writing
kubbaaya (-aat)	drinking glass
kubri (kabaari)	bridge
kufta	ground spiced meat
kull	each, every
kull-ma (+ verb)	whenever
kulliyya (-aat)	college
kumm (akmaam)	sleeve

kursi (karaasi)	chair
kuusa	squash
al-kuweet	Kuwait
kwayyis (-iin)	good
la'	no
laa (+ verb)	do not (negative command)
laakin	but
laazim (+ verb)	must
laff, yiluff	to turn
laga, yilaagi	to find
laHam	meat
lamman	when (non-interrogative)
laṭiif (luṭaaf)	nice, pleasant
law	if
law samaHt	if you please
leel	night
leemuun	lemons
leeṣ?	why?
li'ann	because
libnaan	Lebanon
liHadd-ma (+ verb)	until
liibya	Libya
lillaah	to God
li muddat	for a period of
lissa9	still; not yet
lista (lisat)	list
litir	liter
lugha (-aat)	language
ma (+ verb)	not
ma fii	there is not, are not
maaḡi	last, past

BASIC COURSE

---

maali	financial
maaris	March
maaṣa (-aat)	desk
maayu	May
mabni (-yiin)	built
mabruuk (-iin)	blessed; "congratulations"
mabsuuṭ (-iin)	happy
maḍiina (mudun)	city
maḍrasa (madaaris)	school
maḍxal (madaaxil)	entrance
maḍhuum (-iin)	understood
maḍtuuḥ (-iin)	opened
maḍgaas (-aat)	size
maḍḡuul (-iin)	closed
maḡhrib	sunset
al-maḡhrib	Morocco
maḥad	nobody
maḥall (-aat)	place, store
maḥaṭṭa (-aat)	station, stop
maḥbuub (-iin)	beloved
maḥduud (-iin)	limited, fixed
maḥṣi	stuffed
maḡalla (-aat)	magazine
maḡisteer	Master's degree
maḡlis (maḡaalis)	maḡlis session
maḡaan (amaakin)	place
maḡtab (maḡaatib)	office
maḡtaba (-aat)	library, bookstore
maḡtuub (-iin)	written
maḡlik (muluuk)	king
maḡlika (-aat)	queen

maliki	monarchist, monarchistic
malikiyya	monarchy
malla, yimalli	to fill, fill out
malyoon (malaayiin)	million
mamlaka (-aat)	kingdom
mamnuu9 (-iin)	forbidden
manṭiga (manaṭig)	region, area
manzil (manaazil)	house
man9	embargo, prevention
maqaala (-aat)	article (magazine, newspaper)
marHaba	welcome
marra	very; occasion; some time
masa	p.m., evening
masaa'	evening
masalan	for example
masiiHi (-yiin)	Christian
masjid (masaajid)	mosque
mas'uul (-iin)	responsible; official (person)
maṣur	Egypt
maṣghuul (-iin)	busy
maṣkuur (-iin)	thanked
maṣruu9 (maṣaarii9)	project
maṣwi	grilled
maṭaar (-aat)	airport
maṭar	rain
maṭbax	kitchen
maṭ9am (maṭaa9im)	restaurant
mawgif (mawaagif)	stop, stand (bus, taxi)
mawlid an-nabi	the Prophet's Birthday
mawjuud (-iin)	present, found
mawluud (-iin)	born
maw9ad (mawaa9iid)	appointment

maxtuub (-iin)	engaged (to be married)
maḡbuuḡ (-iin)	correct, precise
ma9a	with
ma9a kida	in spite of that, nevertheless
ma9a l-asaf	unfortunately
ma9aleeš	never mind, it doesn't matter
ma9dan (ma9aadin)	metal
ma9guul (-iin)	believable, reasonable
ma9had (ma9aahid)	institute
ma9muul (-iin)	done
ma9ruuf (-iin)	known, well-known
ma9rifa	acquaintance
miHtaaj (-iin)	needing, in need of
miilaadi	A.D. (Christian calendar)
miin?	who?
milH	salt
min	from; ago
min faḡlak	please
min gheer	without
minHa (minaH)	scholarship, grant
mintaqir (-iin)	waiting
mistanni (-yiin)	waiting
mista9jil (-iin)	in a hurry
miši, yimši	to walk; leave
mita?	when?
mit'akkid (-iin)	sure, certain
mit'assif (-iin)	sorry
mit'axxir (-iin)	late, delayed
mitir (amḡaar)	meter
mitzawwij (-iin)	married
mit9allim (-iin)	educated
miyya (-aat)	hundred

mooz	bananas
moyya	water
mubii9aat	sales
mudarris (-iin)	teacher
mudda	period of time
mudiir (-iin)	director, boss
mudiir maktab	appointments secretary
mufaawaqaat	negotiations
mugaabil	facing
muhandis (-iin)	engineer
muhimm (-iin)	important
muHtall	occupied
mumkin	possible
mumtaaz (-iin)	excellent
musajjil (-aat)	recorder
musaa9ada	help, aid
musaa9id	assistant
musajjal	registered
muslim (-iin)	Moslem
musta9fa (-yaat)	hospital
musta9mal (-iin)	used
mu9kila (ma9aakil)	problem
mu9rif (-iin)	supervisor; inspector
mu9tarawaat	purchases
mutarjim (-iin)	translator, interpreter
muttaHid	united
muu	not
muu kida?	Isn't that so?
muwaafiq (-iin)	in agreement
muwaafalaat	transportation, communication
muwa99af (-iin)	employee
mu9tadil	moderate

BASIC COURSE

---

mu9am	majority
naam, yinaam	to sleep
naas	people
naayib (nuwvaab)	deputy, representative
naqqaf, yinaqqif	to clean
naqiif (nuqaaf)	clean
nafs	same; oneself
naft	oil
nahaar	daytime
nahr (anhaar)	river
najdi (-yiin)	Najdi
najjaar (-iin)	carpenter
naksa	setback
naxil	palmtrees
nazal, yinzal	to descend, stay
nazzal, yinazzal	to cause to descend, take down
na9am?	pardon?
na9am	yes
nimra (nimar)	number
nisi, yinsa	to forget
nizaam (nuzum)	system
noom	sleep
nufambar	November
nus9	half
nuur	light
nuu9 (anwaa9)	type, kind
al-qaahira	Cairo
qa9ar	Qatar
qawmi	national, nationalistic
al-qawmiyya	nationalism
raabi9	fourth
raadyu (rawaadi)	radio

raaH, yiruuH	to go
raas	head
rabbana	our Lord
rabii9	spring (season)
ar-rabuu9	Wednesday
radd, yirudd (9ala)	to answer
ragam (argaam)	number
rajja9, yirajji9	to return (something)
raml	sand
rasmi	official
raṭl (arṭaal)	pound (measurement)
raxiiṣ (ruxaaṣ)	cheap
riji9, yirja9	to return
rijjaal (rijaal)	man
rijl (rujuul)	foot
risaala (rasaayil)	message, letter
riyaaḩa	mathematics
riyaal (-aat)	riyal
rub9	quarter, one fourth
rukṅ (arkaan)	pillar
rumaadi	gray
ruusi (ruus)	Russian (language, nationality)
ruusya	Russia
ruzz	rice
sa'al, yis'al	to ask
saab, yisiib	to leave behind
saabi9	seventh
saadis	sixth
saafar, yisaafir	to travel
saag (-een)	leg
saag, yisuug	to drive
saakin (-iin)	living, residing



BASIC COURSE

---

saanawi	secondary; yearly
saaniya (sawaani)	second (unit of time)
saa9a (-aat).	hour; watch
saa9ad, yisaa9id (fi)	to help
sa'al, yis'al	to ask
as-sabt	Saturday
saba9ṭa9ṣ	seventeen
sab9a	seven
sab9iin	seventy
safaara (-aat)	embassy
safiir (sufara)	ambassador
sahl	easy
salaam	peace
salaama	safety
saliig	rice cooked with milk and meat
sallam, yisallim (9ala)	to greet; make safe
samaH, yismaH	to permit
samak (asmaak)	fish
sana (siniin, sanawaat)	year
sariir (surur)	bed
sawa	together
sawwa, yisawwi	to make, do
sawwaag (-iin)	driver
sayyaara (-aat)	car
sayyid	Mr.
sayyida	Mrs.
sa9iid (su9adaa')	happy
sibtambar	September
sideeri	vest
siib (asyaab)	hall, hallway
siina	Sinai
sikirteer (-iin)	secretary

simi9, yisma9	to hear
sitaara (sataayir)	curtain, drape
sitt (-aat)	woman, lady
sitta	six
sittiin	sixty
siṭṭa9ḥ	sixteen
siyaasa (-aat)	policy
si9r (as9aar)	price
su'aal (as'ila)	question
sujjaada (sajaajiid)	rug, carpet
sukkar	sugar
as-suudaan	Sudan
suug (aswaag)	souk
suuriya	Syria
su9uudi (-yiin)	Saudi
as-su9uudiyya	Saudi Arabia
ṣaala	entrance area in a home
ṣaam, yiṣuum	to fast
ṣaar, yiṣiir	to happen
ṣabaaH	morning
ṣaddar, yiṣaddir	to export
ṣaghiir (ṣughaar)	small
ṣahyuuni (-yiin)	Zionist
aṣ-ṣahyuuniyya	Zionism
ṣaHH	right, correct
ṣaHiiH	true
ṣaHra (ṣaHaari)	desert
ṣalaa	prayer
ṣalla, yiṣalli	to pray
ṣalaṭa	salad
ṣaloon	guests' receiving room

şanduug (şanaadiig)	box, trunk
şanti	centimeter
şaraf, yişruf	to spend
şarraaf (-iin)	moneychanger
şayaađiyya	dish of fish, onions, and rice
şaydala	pharmacy (subject)
şaydaliyya	pharmacy (store)
şa9b	difficult
şeef	summer
şifir	zero
şihHa	health
şinaa9a	industry
şoom	fasting
şubuH	a.m., morning
şufra	table of food
şufraji (-yiin)	waiter
şuuf	wool
şaaHib (aşHaab)	friend
şaaaf, yişuuf	to see
şaahi	tea
şaal, yişiiil	to carry
şaari9 (şawaari9)	street
şaađi' (şawaađi')	coast
şagga (şugag)	apartment
şahar (şuhuur)	month
şajara (aşjaar)	tree
şakar, yuşkur	to thank
şamaal	north
şams	sun
şanđa (şunađ)	suitcase, purse, briefcase
şarg	east
şarika (-aat)	company

aš-šarq al-awsaṭ	the Middle East
šarraf, yišarrif	to honor
šayy (ašyaa')	thing
šayyal, yišayyil	to load, cause to carry
šeex (šuyuuḫ)	sheikh
šihaada (-aat)	declaration of faith; certificate
šimaal	left
širib, yišrab	to drink
šita	winter
šloonak?	How are you?
šubbaak (šabaabiik)	window
šughul (ašghaal)	work
šukr	thanks
šukran	thank you
šurb	drinking
šuyuuḡi (-yiin)	communist
aš-šuyuuḡiyya	communism
šwayya	a little bit
taajir (tujjaar)	merchant
taalit	third
taamin	eighth
taani (-yiin)	second; another, other
taani (+ verb)	again
taariix	history
taasiḡ	ninth
tagiil (tugaal)	heavy
tagriiban	approximately
taḤat	under, below, downstairs
taksi (-yaat)	taxi
takyiif	air conditioning
talaata	three

talaatiin	thirty
talaṭa9ḡ	thirteen
talj	ice, snow
tallaaaja (-aat)	refrigerator
at-taluut	Tuesday
tamaniin	eighty
tamaṇṭa9ḡ	eighteen
tamanya	eight
tamriin (tamaariin)	drill
tamur	dried dates
tarbiya	education, upbringing
tarjama	translation
tarjam, yitarjim	to translate
taṣdiir	exporting
taṣmiim (-aat)	design
ta'ḡiira (-aat)	visa
taww- (+ verb)	just
tazkira (tazaakir)	ticket
ta9aal (irregular)	come!
ta9b	trouble, bother
ta9baan (-iin)	tired
ta9liim	education
ta99ab, yita99ib	to trouble, tire
tijaara	commerce
tilifizyoon (-aat)	television
tilifoon (-aat)	telephone
tisa9ṭa9ḡ	nineteen
tis9a	nine
tis9iin	ninety
tuffaaH	apples
tult	one third

turki (atraak)	Turk
tuunis	Tunisia, Tunis
ṭaaba9 (ṭawaabi9)	stamp
ṭaalib (ṭalaba, ṭullaab)	student
ṭaaza	fresh
ṭabbaax (-iin)	cook
ṭab9an	of course
ṭaḥiina	sesame dip
ṭalab (-aat)	order, request
ṭalab, yuṭlub	to ask for, request, order
ṭalla9, yiṭalli9	to carry up, out
ṭamaaṭim	tomatoes
ṭarabiiza (-aat)	table
ṭarablus	Tripoli
ṭaraf (aṭraaf)	side
ṭard (ṭuruud)	package
ṭariig (ṭurug)	way, road
ṭawiil (ṭuwaal)	tall
ṭayaraan	airlines
ṭayyaara (-aat)	airplane
ṭayyib (-iin)	good, OK
ṭibb	medicine (subject)
ṭili9, yiṭla9	to go up, ascend
ṭi9im	delicious
ṭuul	length
ughuṣṭus	August
uktuubar	October
umma (umam)	nation
umm	mother
al-urdun	Jordan
urubba	Europe

usbuu9 (asaabii9)	week
ustaaz (asaatiza)	professor
utubiis (-aat)	bus
uula (irregular)	first (f)
uxt (axwaat)	sister
waafag, yiwaafig (9ala)	to agree
waaHa (-aat)	oasis
waaHid	one
waajib (-aat)	duty
waalid	father
waalida	mother
waasi9 (-iin)	wide
wagf (awgaaf)	wagf (religious endowment)
waggaf, yiwaggif	to stop, make stop
wagt (awgaat)	time
waHaš	to miss
waja9, yuja9	to hurt
wala	or else
walad (awlaad)	boy, child
walla	or
waŕlah	by God (oath)
wara	behind
warag	paper
warda (wuruud)	flower
warra, yiwarri	to show
waşal, yiwşal	to arrive
wasat	middle, center
waşşal, yiwaşşil	to deliver, take to a destination
waţani	national, patriotic
waziir (wuzara)	minister

wazn (awzaan)	weight
wigif, yiwgaf	to stand, stop
wiHiš (-iin)	bad
wilaaya (-aat)	state (of the U.S.A.)
wizaara (-aat)	ministry
wuguuf	stopping, standing
wujuud	existence, presence
wuṣṭ	waist
xaariji	external, foreign
xaṭir	sake
xabbaaz (-iin)	baker
xaddaam (-iin)	servant
xafiif (xufaaf)	lightweight
xalaṣ	finished
xaliij	gulf
xalla, yixalli	to let, leave, allow
xallaṣ, yixallis	to finish
xamaṣṭa9š	fifteen
al-xamiis	Thursday
xamsa	five
xamsiin	fifty
xaraj, yuxruj	to go out
xarbaan (-iin)	out of order
xariif	autumn
xarraḡ, yixarriḡ	to expel
xaruuf (xirfaan)	lamb
xass	lettuce
xatṭ (xuṭuut)	line
xayyaat (-iin)	tailor
xayyaṭ, yixayyiṭ	to sew
xeer	goodness



BASIC COURSE

---

xidma (xadamaat)	service, favor
xilaal	during
xiyaar	cucumbers
xubz	bread
xuḍaar	vegetables
xuruuj	exit
xuṣuuṣan	especially
xuṭṭa (xuṭaṭ)	plan
ya hala	welcome
al-yabaan	Japan
yabaani (-yiin)	Japanese
yahuudi (-yiin, yahuud)	Jew
yaḷḷa	let's go
al-yaman	Yemen
yamaani (-yiin)	Yemeni
yamiin	right (direction)
yanaayir	January
yarda (-aat)	yard (measurement)
ya9ni	that means, that is to say
yibgha	to want
yimkin	maybe
yoom (ayyaam)	day
al-yoom	today
yuulya	July
yuunya	June
zaakar, yizaakir	to study
zaar, yizuur	to visit
zaayid	plus
zakaa	alms
zamaan	long ago
zawj	wife
zayy	like, similar to

zayy kida	like that
zeen	good
zeet	oil
ziraa9a	agriculture
ziraa9i	agricultural
ziyaada	more, extra
ẓann, yiẓunn	to think
ẓarf (ẓuruuf)	envelope
9aad, yi9iid	to repeat
9aadatan	usually
9aadi (-yiin)	ordinary
9aafiya	strength
9aalam	world
9aalami	international
9aam	year
9aamir	filled
9aašir	tenth
9aašima (9awaāšim)	capital (city)
9aayiš (-iin)	living, alive
9adas	lentils
9add, yi9idd	to count
9adda, yi9addi	to cross
9adl	justice
9afš	luggage
9afwan	you're welcome; pardon me
9ajab, yi9jib	to please
9ala (9a)	on
9ala Hisaab	at the expense of
9ala keefak	you wish
9ala l-agall	at least
9ala mahl-	carefully

9ala tuul	straight ahead
9amal, yi9mil	to do, work
9amal	work
9ammaal (+ verb)	in the process of
9an	about, regarding
9arabi (9arab)	Arab
9arabi	Arabic
9arq	width
9arraf, yi9arrif (9ala)	to introduce, inform
9asa	it is hoped, possibly
9askari	military
9askari (9asaakir)	soldier
9asa	dinner
9aṣaan	because, in order to
9aṣiir	juice
9aṣur	late afternoon
9aṣara	ten
9aṣṣaan (-iin)	thirsty
9azam, yi9zim	to invite
9eela (9awaayil)	family
9een (9uyuun)	eye
9ibaara 9an	composed of
9iid (a9yaad)	holiday
9iid al-giyaama	Easter
9iid al-istiqlaal	Independence Day
9iid al-miilaad	Christmas
9iid miilaad	birthday
9iid aṣ-ṣukr	Thanksgiving
9ilm (9uluum)	science
9imaara (-aat)	building
9inab	grapes
9ind	to have; at the home of

9inwaan (9anaawiin)	address
al-9iraag	Iraq
9irif, yi9rif	to know
9iṣa	evening prayer
9iṣriin	twenty
9ulum siyaasiyya	political science
9umaan	Oman
9umr	life
9uṭla (9uṭal)	vacation

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

- /adda/ 83  
/alli/ 118-119  
Adjectives  
    color 157  
    comparative 93-95  
    gender 14  
    /-i/ 8, 14-15, 52, 221  
    plural 46-47  
    quality 179  
    superlative 94, 235  
    temporary state 170  
Adverbs 106  
/b-/ 8, 19, 82, 112, 128  
/been/ 235  
Compound Tenses 200, 204  
    future perfect 200  
    past perfect 200  
    past progressive 128  
Conditional 200  
Construct State 52-54  
Continuous Tense 128-129  
Days of the Week 67  
Definite Article 2  
    assimilation 4  
/duub-/ 209  
'Either...or' 88  
Elision xvi-xvii  
Equational Sentences 1  
/fii/ 88  
    with /kaan/ 166  
Future Tense 72-73  
/giid-/ 111

/Hagg/ 14

/Hatta/ 226-227

#### Intensifiers

/bil-Heel/ 112

/bil-marra/ 59

/jiddan/ 59

/marra/ 59

#### Imperative

affirmative 78

negative 139

#### Imperfect Tense 18-19

/innu/ 87

/jaa/ 67

/kam/ 82, 93

/kida/ 171, 214

/kull/ 118, 138

/laazim/ 32

/lamman/ 134

/lissa9/ 59, 134

/ma9a/ 12

suffixes 138

/min/ 7, 67, 79, 99

suffixes 94

#### Modal Words 19, 32, 88-89

with /kaan/ 149-150, 214

Money 68, 82

#### Months

Islamic 226

Western 93

/mumkin/ 19

/mu9zam/ 231

/nafs/ 184, 189

Negative

/ma/ 88

/muu/ 41

Nouns

abstract 221-222

containers 112

dual 73, 106

employment 193

gender 14

measurement 192-193

phrases 14, 53-54

place 162

plural

broken 46

collective 175

regular feminine 46

regular masculine 46

Numbers

cardinal 59, 68-69

ordinal 143-144

telephone 123

Participles

active 67, 110-113

passive 99-100

Percent 189

Perfect Tense 13-14, 60

Pronouns

demonstrative 26, 41

direct object 8, 24-25

indirect object 32-34, 123

personal 23-24

possessive 25-26

Root-Pattern System 19

Stress 2

/tuul/ 226

Time 59, 73, 111-112

ago 67

last 99

next 93

of day 139

Titles 149

Verbs 13-14

/aa/ 60

/asta-/ 35

causative 160-161

doubled 59-60

double object 157

glottal stop 41

helping 88, 112, 128, 133, 204

hollow 34-35

passive 183

Verbal Nouns 161

Vocative Particle 26

'without' 82

/xalla/ 133

Years 93

/yibgha/ 88

/yimkin/ 89

/9ajab/ 87

/9ala/ 5, 123

suffixes 31

/9ammaal/ 179

/9an/ 171

suffixes 42



**BASIC COURSE**

---

/9asa/ 166

/9ind/ 98, 123